



1
2
3
4

Document Identifier: DSP1001

Date: 2014-07-31

Version: 1.2.0

5 **Management Profile Usage Guide**

6
7
8
9
10

Document type: Specification

Document status: DMTF Standard

Document language: en-US

- 11 Copyright Notice
- 12 Copyright © 2006, 2009, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014 Distributed Management Task Force, Inc. (DMTF).
13 All rights reserved.
- 14 DMTF is a not-for-profit association of industry members dedicated to promoting enterprise and systems
15 management and interoperability. Members and non-members may reproduce DMTF specifications and
16 documents, provided that correct attribution is given. As DMTF specifications may be revised from time to
17 time, the particular version and release date should always be noted.
- 18 Implementation of certain elements of this standard or proposed standard may be subject to third party
19 patent rights, including provisional patent rights (herein "patent rights"). DMTF makes no representations
20 to users of the standard as to the existence of such rights, and is not responsible to recognize, disclose,
21 or identify any or all such third party patent right, owners or claimants, nor for any incomplete or
22 inaccurate identification or disclosure of such rights, owners or claimants. DMTF shall have no liability to
23 any party, in any manner or circumstance, under any legal theory whatsoever, for failure to recognize,
24 disclose, or identify any such third party patent rights, or for such party's reliance on the standard or
25 incorporation thereof in its product, protocols or testing procedures. DMTF shall have no liability to any
26 party implementing such standard, whether such implementation is foreseeable or not, nor to any patent
27 owner or claimant, and shall have no liability or responsibility for costs or losses incurred if a standard is
28 withdrawn or modified after publication, and shall be indemnified and held harmless by any party
29 implementing the standard from any and all claims of infringement by a patent owner for such
30 implementations.
- 31 For information about patents held by third-parties which have notified the DMTF that, in their opinion,
32 such patent may relate to or impact implementations of DMTF standards, visit
33 <http://www.dmtf.org/about/policies/disclosures.php>.

CONTENTS

| | | |
|----|---|----|
| 35 | Introduction..... | 10 |
| 36 | Document conventions..... | 10 |
| 37 | Typographical conventions..... | 10 |
| 38 | ABNF usage conventions..... | 10 |
| 39 | Deprecated material..... | 10 |
| 40 | Experimental material..... | 11 |
| 41 | 1 Scope..... | 13 |
| 42 | 2 Normative references..... | 13 |
| 43 | 3 Terms and definitions..... | 14 |
| 44 | 4 Symbols and abbreviated terms..... | 24 |
| 45 | 5 Principle concepts..... | 25 |
| 46 | 5.1 Overview..... | 25 |
| 47 | 5.2 Management domain..... | 26 |
| 48 | 5.3 Managed object type..... | 26 |
| 49 | 5.4 Managed environment and managed objects..... | 26 |
| 50 | 5.5 Management Profile..... | 27 |
| 51 | 5.6 Relationships between profile definition and management domain..... | 27 |
| 52 | 5.6.1 Profile defined mappings..... | 27 |
| 53 | 5.6.2 Existence and lifecycle of adaptation instances..... | 27 |
| 54 | 5.6.3 Model effected control of managed objects in a managed environment..... | 29 |
| 55 | 5.7 Events and indications..... | 29 |
| 56 | 5.8 Requirement levels..... | 30 |
| 57 | 5.8.1 General..... | 30 |
| 58 | 5.8.2 Usage of the "derivation" requirement level..... | 30 |
| 59 | 5.8.3 Usage of the "mandatory" requirement level..... | 30 |
| 60 | 5.8.4 Usage of the "optional" requirement level..... | 30 |
| 61 | 5.8.5 Usage of the "conditional" requirement level..... | 31 |
| 62 | 5.8.6 Usage of the "conditional exclusive" requirement level..... | 31 |
| 63 | 5.8.7 Usage of the "prohibited" requirement level..... | 31 |
| 64 | 5.9 Implementation conditions..... | 31 |
| 65 | 5.9.1 General..... | 31 |
| 66 | 5.9.2 Profile implementation condition..... | 32 |
| 67 | 5.9.3 Feature implementation condition..... | 32 |
| 68 | 5.9.4 Class adaptation implementation condition..... | 33 |
| 69 | 5.9.5 Instance existence condition..... | 33 |
| 70 | 5.9.6 Property value condition..... | 34 |
| 71 | 5.9.7 Managed environment condition..... | 35 |
| 72 | 5.10 Discovery mechanisms..... | 36 |
| 73 | 5.10.1 General..... | 36 |
| 74 | 5.10.2 Discovery through an identified adaptation instance..... | 36 |
| 75 | 5.10.3 Discovery through a related adaptation instance..... | 36 |
| 76 | 5.10.4 Implementation discovery through specific property values..... | 37 |
| 77 | 5.11 Profile identification..... | 37 |
| 78 | 5.11.1 General..... | 37 |
| 79 | 5.11.2 Registered profile name..... | 37 |
| 80 | 5.11.3 Registered profile version..... | 38 |
| 81 | 5.11.4 Registered organization name..... | 38 |
| 82 | 5.11.5 Organizational contact..... | 38 |
| 83 | 5.12 Schema reference..... | 38 |
| 84 | 5.12.1 General..... | 38 |
| 85 | 5.12.2 Schema version..... | 38 |

| | | | |
|-----|---------|--|----|
| 86 | 5.12.3 | Schema name..... | 38 |
| 87 | 5.12.4 | Schema organization | 39 |
| 88 | 5.12.5 | Schema experimental flag | 39 |
| 89 | 5.13 | Profile categories | 39 |
| 90 | 5.13.1 | General | 39 |
| 91 | 5.13.2 | Autonomous profiles | 39 |
| 92 | 5.13.3 | Component profiles..... | 39 |
| 93 | 5.13.4 | Pattern profiles..... | 40 |
| 94 | 5.14 | Profile references..... | 40 |
| 95 | 5.14.1 | General | 40 |
| 96 | 5.14.2 | Profile element propagation..... | 40 |
| 97 | 5.14.3 | Profile derivation | 43 |
| 98 | 5.14.4 | Profile usage | 45 |
| 99 | 5.15 | Abstract and concrete profiles | 49 |
| 100 | 5.15.1 | Abstract profile | 49 |
| 101 | 5.15.2 | Concrete profile..... | 50 |
| 102 | 5.16 | Management domain | 50 |
| 103 | 5.17 | Profile registration | 51 |
| 104 | 5.18 | Profile element names | 51 |
| 105 | 5.19 | Class adaptations | 52 |
| 106 | 5.19.1 | General | 52 |
| 107 | 5.19.2 | Adapted class and base adaptations..... | 53 |
| 108 | 5.19.3 | Abstract class adaptation..... | 56 |
| 109 | 5.19.4 | Trivial class adaptation | 56 |
| 110 | 5.19.5 | Management domain context of class adaptations | 56 |
| 111 | 5.19.6 | Requirement level..... | 57 |
| 112 | 5.19.7 | Individual requirement levels of base adaptations..... | 57 |
| 113 | 5.19.8 | Implementation type..... | 57 |
| 114 | 5.19.9 | Designation of base adaptation candidates..... | 58 |
| 115 | 5.19.10 | Metric requirements | 58 |
| 116 | 5.19.11 | Method requirements | 59 |
| 117 | 5.19.12 | Operation requirements | 62 |
| 118 | 5.19.13 | Instance requirements | 66 |
| 119 | 5.19.14 | Property requirements | 67 |
| 120 | 5.19.15 | Value constraints | 68 |
| 121 | 5.19.16 | Input value requirements | 70 |
| 122 | 5.19.17 | Indication adaptations..... | 72 |
| 123 | 5.19.18 | Examples of class adaptations | 73 |
| 124 | 5.20 | Features..... | 74 |
| 125 | 5.20.1 | Introduction | 74 |
| 126 | 5.20.2 | General feature requirements..... | 74 |
| 127 | 5.20.3 | Feature name..... | 75 |
| 128 | 5.20.4 | Feature requirement level..... | 75 |
| 129 | 5.20.5 | Feature granularity..... | 75 |
| 130 | 5.20.6 | Feature discovery | 75 |
| 131 | 5.20.7 | Feature requirements | 76 |
| 132 | 5.20.8 | Feature example | 77 |
| 133 | 5.21 | Profile references..... | 78 |
| 134 | 5.21.1 | General | 78 |
| 135 | 5.21.2 | Types of profile references | 79 |
| 136 | 5.21.3 | Identification of the minimally required version of a referenced profile | 80 |
| 137 | 5.21.4 | Prohibition of the relaxation of requirements | 80 |
| 138 | 5.21.5 | Rules for the repetition of content from referenced profiles | 80 |
| 139 | 5.21.6 | Rules for derived adaptations | 80 |
| 140 | 5.22 | Registry references..... | 80 |

| | | | |
|-----|---------|---|-----|
| 141 | 5.23 | State descriptions | 81 |
| 142 | 5.24 | Use cases | 82 |
| 143 | 5.24.1 | General | 82 |
| 144 | 5.24.2 | Requirements for the definition of preconditions | 82 |
| 145 | 5.24.3 | Requirements for the definition of flows of activities..... | 82 |
| 146 | 5.24.4 | Requirements for the definition of postconditions..... | 83 |
| 147 | 6 | Specification requirements | 83 |
| 148 | 6.1 | General | 83 |
| 149 | 6.2 | Profile and profile specification conformance | 84 |
| 150 | 6.3 | Machine readable profiles..... | 84 |
| 151 | 6.4 | DMTF conformance requirements | 84 |
| 152 | 6.5 | Linguistic and notational conventions | 84 |
| 153 | 6.6 | Backward compatibility | 86 |
| 154 | 6.7 | Experimental content | 86 |
| 155 | 6.8 | Deprecation of profile content..... | 86 |
| 156 | 6.9 | Diagram conventions and guidelines..... | 86 |
| 157 | 6.9.1 | General | 86 |
| 158 | 6.9.2 | Diagram conventions | 87 |
| 159 | 6.9.3 | DMTF adaptation diagram | 89 |
| 160 | 6.9.4 | DMTF object diagram | 92 |
| 161 | 6.10 | Requirement level specification conventions..... | 94 |
| 162 | 6.11 | Implementation type specification conventions | 95 |
| 163 | 6.12 | Conditional element specification conventions | 95 |
| 164 | 6.12.1 | General | 95 |
| 165 | 6.12.2 | Specification of conditional elements outside of tables | 95 |
| 166 | 6.12.3 | Specification of conditional elements within tables..... | 96 |
| 167 | 6.13 | Value constraint specification conventions | 96 |
| 168 | 6.13.1 | Conventions for the specifications of default property values | 99 |
| 169 | 6.13.2 | Conventions for the specification of reference multiplicities | 99 |
| 170 | 6.14 | Profile specification structures | 100 |
| 171 | 6.14.1 | General | 100 |
| 172 | 6.14.2 | Condensed profile specification structure..... | 100 |
| 173 | 6.14.3 | Traditional profile specification structure | 100 |
| 174 | 6.14.4 | Usage of profile specification structures | 102 |
| 175 | 6.15 | Requirements for profile specification clauses | 102 |
| 176 | 6.15.1 | General | 102 |
| 177 | 6.15.2 | Requirements for the numbering of profile specification clauses and subclauses | 103 |
| 178 | 6.15.3 | Requirements for the specification of the "Terms and definitions" clause..... | 103 |
| 179 | 6.15.4 | Requirements for the specification of the "Conformance" clause | 104 |
| 180 | 6.15.5 | Requirements for the specification of the "Synopsis" clause..... | 104 |
| 181 | 6.15.6 | Requirements for the specification of the "Description" clause | 111 |
| 182 | 6.15.7 | Requirements for the specification of the "Implementation" clause | 112 |
| 183 | 6.15.8 | Requirements for the specification of the "Methods" clause | 124 |
| 184 | 6.15.9 | Requirements for the specification of the "Use cases" clause | 128 |
| 185 | 6.15.10 | Requirements for the specification of the "CIM elements" clause | 130 |
| 186 | 7 | Implementation requirements..... | 133 |
| 187 | 7.1 | General | 133 |
| 188 | 7.2 | Implementation conformance | 133 |
| 189 | 7.2.1 | Interface implementation conformance..... | 133 |
| 190 | 7.2.2 | Full implementation conformance..... | 133 |
| 191 | 7.2.3 | Implementation conformance of multiple profiles | 134 |
| 192 | 7.2.4 | Implementation conformance of profile versions | 134 |
| 193 | 7.2.5 | Listener implementation conformance | 134 |
| 194 | 7.2.6 | Client implementation conformance | 134 |
| 195 | 7.2.7 | Instance conformance | 134 |

196 7.3 Implementation requirements for a set of profiles 135
 197 7.3.1 General 135
 198 7.3.2 Implementation adaptation 135
 199 7.3.3 Profile implementation context..... 136
 200 7.3.4 Implementation optimizations 138
 201 7.3.5 Schema requirements..... 138
 202 7.4 Implementation requirements for implementation adaptations..... 138
 203 7.4.1 General 138
 204 7.4.2 Implementation requirements for properties 139
 205 7.4.3 Implementation requirements for methods and operations 139
 206 7.4.4 Instance requirements 141
 207 7.4.5 Indication generation requirements 141
 208 7.5 Merge algorithm 141
 209 7.5.1 General 141
 210 7.5.2 Merge algorithm steps 142
 211 7.5.3 Profile implementation check..... 142
 212 7.5.4 Adaptation implementation check..... 143
 213 7.6 Implementation of deprecated definitions 144
 214 ANNEX A (Informative) Examples 145
 215 A.1 General 145
 216 A.2 Example of a "Synopsis" clause 145
 217 A.3 Example of a "Description" clause..... 148
 218 A.4 Example of an "Implementation" clause 150
 219 A.5 Example of the "Use cases" clause 166
 220 ANNEX B (normative) Regular expression syntax..... 170
 221 ANNEX C (informative) Change log..... 173
 222 Bibliography 176
 223

224 **Figures**

| | | |
|-----|---|-----|
| 225 | Figure 1 – Profile and management domain..... | 25 |
| 226 | Figure 2 – Existence of adaptation instances | 28 |
| 227 | Figure 3 – Complexity when an implementation decision depends on a run-time element | 34 |
| 228 | Figure 4 – Autonomous profile and optional component profiles..... | 47 |
| 229 | Figure 5 – Variant of a component profile using system scope | 48 |
| 230 | Figure 6 – Variant of a component profile using element scope..... | 49 |
| 231 | Figure 7 – Example: class adaptation references and resultant schema | 54 |
| 232 | Figure 8 – Example Sensors profile..... | 55 |
| 233 | Figure 9 – Example Feature..... | 77 |
| 234 | Figure 10 – Examples of DMTF adaptation diagrams | 91 |
| 235 | Figure 11 – Example Switch UML object diagram | 94 |
| 236 | Figure 12 – Traditional and condensed profile structures..... | 102 |
| 237 | Figure 13 – Example set of related profiles | 136 |
| 238 | Figure 14 – Example resulting profile implementation contexts | 137 |
| 239 | Figure 15 – Example of merging of adaptations into implementation adaptations | 137 |

240 **Tables**

| | | |
|-----|--|-----|
| 241 | Table 1 – Example management domain definition..... | 50 |
| 242 | Table 2 – Specification recommendations | 85 |
| 243 | Table 3 – Example of string property format definition | 98 |
| 244 | Table 4 – Requirements for profile specification clauses | 103 |
| 245 | Table 5 – Common text for the "Terms and definitions" clause of profile specifications | 104 |
| 246 | Table 6 – Requirements for the specification of profile attributes..... | 105 |
| 247 | Table 7 – Requirements for columns of the table of profile reference | 107 |
| 248 | Table 8 – Requirements for columns of the tables of registry references | 108 |
| 249 | Table 9 – Requirements for columns of the table of features | 109 |
| 250 | Table 10 – Requirements for columns of the table of adaptations | 110 |
| 251 | Table 11 – Requirements for columns of the table of use cases..... | 111 |
| 252 | Table 12 – Profile diagram types | 112 |
| 253 | Table 13 – Requirements for columns of "Element requirements" tables | 115 |
| 254 | Table 14 – Requirements for columns in "Input value requirements" tables | 118 |
| 255 | Table 15 – Requirements for columns in "Method parameter requirements" tables | 119 |
| 256 | Table 16 – Requirements for columns of the "Error reporting requirements" table | 122 |
| 257 | Table 17 – Requirements for columns of the standard message table | 122 |
| 258 | Table 18 – Requirements for columns in method parameter tables | 125 |
| 259 | Table 19 – Requirements for columns of the return value table | 126 |
| 260 | Table 20 – Profile convention options..... | 127 |
| 261 | Table A-1 – Example of "Synopsis" clause..... | 145 |
| 262 | Table A-2 – Example of a "Description" clause | 149 |
| 263 | Table A-3 – Overview example of an "Implementation" clause | 150 |
| 264 | Table A-4 – Example definitions of features | 150 |
| 265 | Table A-5 – Example of the "Conventions" subclause | 152 |
| 266 | Table A-6 – Examples of subclauses defining adaptations | 153 |

267 Table A-7 – Examples of subclauses defining specific indication adaptations..... 162

268 Table A-8 – Example of "Use cases" clause..... 166

269

270

Foreword

271 The *Management Profile Usage Guide* (DSP1001) was prepared by the DMTF Profile Infrastructure
272 Working Group.

273 DMTF is a not-for-profit association of industry members dedicated to promoting enterprise and systems
274 management and interoperability. For information about the DMTF, see <http://www.dmtf.org>.

275 Acknowledgments

276 DMTF acknowledges the following individuals for their contributions to this guide:

- 277 • Jim Davis, WBEM Solutions
- 278 • George Ericson, EMC
- 279 • Steve Hand, Symantec
- 280 • Jon Hass, Dell
- 281 • Michael Johanssen, IBM
- 282 • Andreas Maier, IBM
- 283 • Aaron Merkin, Dell
- 284 • Karl Schopmeyer, DMTF Fellow
- 285 • Paul von Behren, Sun Microsystems

286

287

Introduction

288 The information in this guide should be sufficient for profile authors to incorporate all the semantic and
 289 formal elements required for the specification of a management profile. The information in this guide
 290 should be sufficient for profile implementers to ascertain the implementation requirements imposed by
 291 this guide, by the set of implemented profiles, by the CIM schema and by other appropriate specifications.

292 Document conventions

293 Typographical conventions

294 Any text in this document is in normal text font, with the following exceptions:

295 Document titles are marked in *italics*.¹

296 Important terms that are used for the first time are marked in *italics*.

297 Terms include a link to the term definition in the "Terms and definitions" clause, enabling easy navigation
 298 to the term definition.

299 ABNF rules are in `monospaced font`.

300 ABNF usage conventions

301 Format definitions in this document are specified using ABNF (see [RFC5234](#)), with the following
 302 deviations:

- 303 • Literal strings are to be interpreted as case-sensitive Unicode characters, as opposed to the
 304 definition in [RFC5234](#) that interprets literal strings as case-insensitive US-ASCII characters.

305 The following ABNF rules are frequently applied in this guide:

```
306 HT = %x09
307 LF = %x0a
308 CR = %x0d
309 SP = %x20
310 CRLF = CR LF
311 LB = LF / CRLF
312 WS = ( HT / SP )
313 LWS = 1*WS /
314     (WS *( *WS 1*LB *WS) ) /
315     ( * (*WS 1*LB *WS) WS)
```

316 Deprecated material

317 Deprecated material is not recommended for use in new development efforts. Existing and new
 318 implementations may use this material, but they shall move to the favored approach as soon as possible.
 319 CIM services shall implement any deprecated elements as required by this document in order to achieve
 320 backwards compatibility. Although CIM clients may use deprecated elements, they are directed to use the
 321 favored elements instead.

¹ Note that referencing a profile by its name does not constitute a document title; for details, see 5.11.2.

322 Deprecated material should contain references to the last published version that included the deprecated
323 material as normative material and to a description of the favored approach.

324 The following typographical convention indicates deprecated material:

325 **DEPRECATED**

326 Deprecated material appears here.

327 **DEPRECATED**

328 In places where this typographical convention cannot be used (for example, tables or figures), the
329 "DEPRECATED" label is used alone.

330 **Experimental material**

331 Experimental material has yet to receive sufficient review to satisfy the adoption requirements set forth by
332 the DMTF. Experimental material is included in this document as an aid to implementers who are
333 interested in likely future developments. Experimental material may change as implementation
334 experience is gained. It is likely that experimental material will be included in an upcoming revision of the
335 document. Until that time, experimental material is purely informational.

336 The following typographical convention indicates experimental material:

337 **EXPERIMENTAL**

338 Experimental material appears here.

339 **EXPERIMENTAL**

340 In places where this typographical convention cannot be used (for example, tables or figures), the
341 "EXPERIMENTAL" label is used alone.

342

344

Management Profile Usage Guide

1 Scope

346 This guide defines the usage of and requirements for management profiles and management profile
347 specification documents.

348 A *management profile* (short: *profile*) defines a management interface between implementations of a
349 WBEM server and a WBEM client. In addition, a profile may define a management interface between a
350 WBEM server and a WBEM listener for the delivery of indications. The management interfaces establish
351 a contract between the involved WBEM components, but are not an API because they do not define a
352 programming interface. A profile defines a model and its behavior in the context of a management
353 domain. Model and behavior are defined by selecting, specializing, and sometimes constraining elements
354 from a schema and the set of operations (including indication delivery operations) for a particular
355 purpose. A profile establishes a relationship between the model and the management domain. A profile
356 defines use cases on the model that illustrate client-visible behavior.

357 A *management profile specification* document (short: *profile specification*) contains the textual
358 specification of one or more management profiles and may also contain content that does not specify a
359 profile.

360 Profiles and profile specifications may be owned by DMTF or by other organizations.

361 The target audience for this guide is anyone creating profiles or profile specifications (regardless of
362 whether these are published by DMTF or published by other organizations), and implementers of profiles.

363 NOTE 1 This guide is not a template for a profile specification. To create a profile specification, start with the
364 publishing organization's template and add clauses as described in this guide. For profiles published by DMTF, use
365 DSP1000.

366 NOTE 2 This guide is not a profile specification; it defines the requirements for creating profiles or profile
367 specifications.

368 This guide targets several audiences. Clause 5 provides foundational material for all audiences. It
369 specifies principal concepts and profile requirements. Profile authors shall create profile specifications
370 according to the requirements of clause 6. Implementation developers shall implement profiles according
371 to the requirements of clause 7. To better understand profile specifications and implementations, client
372 developers should also be familiar with clause 7.

2 Normative references

374 The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this guide. For dated or
375 versioned references, only the edition cited (including any corrigenda or DMTF update versions) applies.
376 For references without a date or version, the latest published edition of the referenced document
377 (including any corrigenda or DMTF update versions) applies.

378 DMTF DSP0004, *CIM Infrastructure Specification 2.6*,
379 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0004_2.6.pdf

380 DMTF DSP0215, *Server Management Managed Element Addressing Specification 1.0*,
381 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0215_1.0.pdf

382 DMTF DSP0223, *Generic Operations 1.0*,
383 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0223_1.0.pdf

- 384 DMTF DSP0228, *Message Registry XML Schema 1.1*,
385 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0228_1.1.xsd
- 386 DMTF DSP1033, *Profile Registration Profile 1.0*,
387 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1033_1.0.pdf
- 388 DMTF DSP1053, *Base Metrics Profile 1.0*,
389 http://dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP1053_1.0.1.pdf
- 390 DMTF DSP1054, *Indications Profile 1.1*,
391 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1054_1.1.pdf
- 392 DMTF DSP4014, *DMTF Process for Working Bodies*,
393 http://schemas.dmtf.org/process/DSP4014_1.1.0/
- 394 DMTF DSP8016, *WBEM Operations Message Registry 1.0*,
395 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/messageregistry/1/dsp8016_1.0.xml
- 396 DMTF DSP8020, *Message Registry XML Schema Specification 1.1*,
397 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/metricregistry/1/dsp8020_1.1.0.xsd
- 398 DMTF DSP8028, *Management Profile XML Schema Specification 1.1*,
399 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/mgmtprofile/1/dsp8028_1.1.0.xsd
- 400 DMTF DSP8029, *Management Profile Print XSLT Stylesheet 1.1*,
401 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/mgmtprofile/1/dsp8029_1.1.0.xsl
- 402 IETF RFC3629, *UTF-8, a transformation format of ISO 10646*, November 2003,
403 <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3629>
- 404 IETF RFC5234, *ABNF: Augmented BNF for Syntax Specifications*, January 2008,
405 <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5234>
- 406 ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2:2004, *Rules for the structure and drafting of International Standards*,
407 <http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink.exe?func=ll&objId=4230456&objAction=browse&sort=subtype>
- 408 Object Management Group, *OMG Unified Modeling Language (OMG UML) Superstructure 2.4.1*,
409 <http://www.omg.org/spec/UML/2.4.1/Superstructure/PDF>
- 410 The Open Group, "Regular Expressions" in *The Single UNIX® Specification, Version 2*,
411 <http://www.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/7908799/xbd/re.html>

412 3 Terms and definitions

413 In this guide, some terms have a specific meaning beyond the normal English meaning. Those terms are
414 defined in this clause.

415 The phrases "shall" ("required"), "shall not", "should" ("recommended"), "should not" ("not
416 recommended"), "may", "need not" ("not required"), "can" and "cannot" in this document are to be
417 interpreted as described in ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, Annex H. The terms in parenthesis are alternatives
418 for the preceding term, for use in exceptional cases when the preceding term cannot be used for linguistic
419 reasons. Note that ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, Annex H specifies additional alternatives. Occurrences of
420 such additional alternatives shall be interpreted in their normal English meaning.

421 The terms "clause", "subclause", "paragraph", "annex" in this document are to be interpreted as described
422 in ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, Clause 5.

423 The terms "normative" and "informative" in this document are to be interpreted as described in ISO/IEC
424 Directives, Part 2, Clause 3. In this guide, clauses, subclauses or annexes indicated with "(informative)"
425 as well as notes and examples do not contain normative content.

426 The terms defined in [DSP0004](#) and [DSP0223](#) apply to this guide.

427 **3.1**

428 **abstract**

429 a possible implementation type of class adaptations

430 For details, see 5.19.3.

431 **3.2**

432 **abstract class adaptation**

433 a class adaptation with an implementation type of "abstract".

434 The requirements of abstract class adaptations apply only in the context of other class adaptations that
435 use them as base adaptations.

436 For details, see 5.19.3.

437 **3.3**

438 **abstract profile**

439 a special kind of profile specifying common elements and behavior as a base for derived profiles

440 For a complete definition see 5.14.2.9.

441 **3.4**

442 **adaptation**

443 short form for class adaptation

444 **3.5**

445 **adaptation instance**

446 an instance of an adapted class that complies with all requirements of the class adaptation

447 For details see 7.2.7.

448 **3.6**

449 **adapted class**

450 a class that is the subject of a class adaptation

451 For details see 5.19.2.

452 **3.7**

453 **autonomous profile**

454 a profile that defines an autonomous and self-contained interface for a specified management domain.

455 For details see 5.13.2.

456 **3.8**

457 **backward compatibility**

458 a characteristic of profiles enabling clients written against prior minor versions of a profile to use the
459 functionality specified by that version in the context of a profile implementation of a later minor version,
460 without requiring modifications of the client

461 For a complete definition, see 6.6.

- 462 **3.9**
463 **base adaptation**
464 a class adaptation of a referenced profile whose requirements and constraints are adopted by a class
465 adaptation of a referencing profile
466 For details, see 5.19.2.
- 467 **3.10**
468 **base profile**
469 a referenced profile that is used as the base for another profile
470 For details, see 5.14.1.
- 471 **3.11**
472 **central class adaptation**
473 a specifically designated class adaptation in a profile
474 The central class adaptation is the focal point of the profile. For a complete definition, see 5.14.4.2.
- 475 **3.12**
476 **class adaptation**
477 a named profile element that defines requirements and constraints on a class that participates in the
478 representation of a managed object or in specifying a relationship between managed objects.
479 A class adaptation adapts a class definition from a schema for a particular purpose and may be based on
480 other class adaptations.
481 For a complete definition, see 5.19.
- 482 **3.13**
483 **client**
484 a WBEM client that exploits applicable portions of a profile
485 See also the term "implementation".
- 486 **3.14**
487 **component profile**
488 a profile that defines additional interfaces for a specified management domain, but which is not itself
489 autonomous or self-contained.
490 For details, see 5.13.3.
- 491 **3.15**
492 **concrete profile**
493 any profile that is not an abstract profile
494 For a complete definition, see 5.15.2.
- 495 **3.16**
496 **concrete class adaptation**
497 any class adaptation that is not an abstract class adaptation
498 For details, see 5.19.3.
- 499 **3.17**
500 **condition**
501 a specification mechanism in profiles that determines whether conditional or conditional exclusive profile
502 elements shall be implemented
503 For a complete definition, see 5.9.

- 504 **3.18**
505 **conditional**
506 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile requires the implementation of the designated profile
507 element only under certain conditions, and otherwise leaves the decision to implement the designated
508 profile element to the implementation
509 See 5.8 for usage considerations, and 7.2 for implementation considerations.
- 510 **3.19**
511 **conditional exclusive**
512 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile requires the implementation of the designated profile
513 element only under certain conditions, and otherwise prohibits the implementation of the designated
514 profile element
515 See 5.8 for usage considerations, and 7.2 for implementation considerations.
- 516 **3.20**
517 **conditional profile**
518 a profile referenced with the conditional requirement level
- 519 **3.21**
520 **conditional exclusive profile**
521 a profile referenced with the conditional exclusive requirement level
- 522 **3.22**
523 **deprecated**
524 keyword indicating that a profile element or profile defined behavior is outdated and has been replaced by
525 newer constructs
526 For details, see 6.8.
- 527 **3.23**
528 **derivation**
529 a requirement level indicating that the referencing profile is based on, and substitutable for, the specified
530 referenced profile.
531 See 5.8 for usage considerations, and 7.2 for implementation considerations.
- 532 **3.24**
533 **derived profile**
534 a profile that is based on a referenced profile
535 For a complete definition, see 5.14.1.
- 536 **3.25**
537 **discovery mechanism**
538 a profile-defined, CIM-model-based mechanism yielding a Boolean result that enables clients to discover
539 whether optional, conditional, or conditional exclusive profile elements are implemented or available
540 For a complete definition, see 5.10.
- 541 **3.26**
542 **error reporting requirement**
543 a requirement stated as part of a method requirement or operation requirement to report an error situation
544 For details, see 5.19.11.4 and 5.19.12.6.

- 545 **3.27**
546 **event**
547 an observable occurrence of a phenomenon of interest
548 For details, see 5.7.
- 549 **3.28**
550 **feature**
551 a profile element that groups the decisions for the implementation of one or more profile elements into a
552 single decision
553 For a complete definition, see 5.20.
- 554 **3.29**
555 **implementation**
556 a WBEM server that implements applicable portions of one or more profiles
557 For details, see clause 6.
- 558 **3.30**
559 **implementation adaptation**
560 an implementation-required adaptation
561 For a complete definition, see 7.3.2.
- 562 **3.31**
563 **implementation adaptation set**
564 the set of implementation adaptations required to be implemented as part of an implementation
565 For a complete definition, see 7.3.1.
- 566 **3.32**
567 **implementation-required**
568 a phrase indicating that the implementation of a profile or profile element is required within an
569 implementation, including the case where an optional profile or profile element was selected to be
570 implemented
571 For a complete definition, see 7.3.1.
- 572 **3.33**
573 **implementation type**
574 a type assigned to an adaptation that details how the adaptation is to be implemented
575 For a complete definition, see 5.19.8.
- 576 **3.34**
577 **incompatibility**
578 a change that breaks backward compatibility
- 579 **3.35**
580 **indication**
581 the notification about an event that occurred
- 582 **3.36**
583 **indication adaptation**
584 an adaptation of an indication class

- 585 **3.37**
586 **indication-generation requirement**
587 a requirement that states one or more events (see 5.7), each of which individually requires the generation
588 of a particular indication
589 For details, see 5.19.17.2.
- 590 **3.38**
591 **input value requirement**
592 a requirement, stated as part of a property requirement, or part of a parameter requirement within a
593 method requirement, that the implementation accept a specific input value
594 For details, see 5.19.16.
- 595 **3.39**
596 **instance requirement**
597 a requirement that defines how (and in some cases also under which conditions) managed objects are to
598 be represented by adaptation instances
599 For details, see 5.19.13.
- 600 **3.40**
601 **listener**
602 a WBEM listener that implements applicable portions of the Indications profile (see [DSP1054](#))
- 603 **3.41**
604 **management domain**
605 area of work or field of activity with common management requirements, common terminology, and
606 related management functionality
607 For details, see 5.2.
- 608 **3.42**
609 **managed environment**
610 a concrete occurrence of the management domain. A managed environment is composed of managed
611 objects.
612 For details, see 5.4.
- 613 **3.43**
614 **managed object**
615 a resource that exists independently of its use in management. Managed objects exist in managed
616 environments. A managed object may be represented by a set of related adaptation instances.
617 For details, see 5.4.
- 618 **3.44**
619 **managed object type**
620 a conceptual generalization or type of managed object, (e.g., a physical entity like a fan or power supply,
621 a logical entity like a file system or system, a service like provisioning...) A managed object type is
622 represented by a set of related class adaptations.
623 For details, see 5.3.

- 624 **3.45**
625 **management profile**
626 a management interface between implementations of a WBEM server and a WBEM client.
627 For details, see 5.5.
- 628 **3.46**
629 **management profile specification**
630 a specification document that contains the textual specification of one or more management profiles and
631 optionally may contain additional content.
- 632 **3.47**
633 **mandatory**
634 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile unconditionally requires the implementation of the
635 designated profile element
636 See 5.8 for usage considerations, and 7.2 for implementation considerations.
- 637 **3.48**
638 **mandatory profile**
639 a profile referenced with the mandatory requirement level
- 640 **3.49**
641 **match**
642 a keyword indicating that the values of a property or parameter match the values specified by a pattern
643 For details see 6.13.
- 644 **3.50**
645 **method requirement**
646 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on a method
647 exposed by the adapted class
648 For details, see 5.19.11.
- 649 **3.51**
650 **message registry**
651 a published registry of messages formatted as defined in [DSP0228](#)
- 652 **3.52**
653 **metric requirement**
654 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on a metric
655 defined in a metric registry
656 For details, see 5.19.10.
- 657 **3.53**
658 **metric registry**
659 a published registry of metric definitions, and optionally statistics definitions, formatted as defined in
660 [DSP8020](#)
- 661 **3.54**
662 **named profile element**
663 a profile element that is assigned a name with profile name scope
664 For details, see 5.18.

- 665 **3.55**
666 **operation requirement**
667 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on an
668 operation defined in an operations specification
669 For details, see 5.19.12.
- 670 **3.56**
671 **operations specification**
672 a specification that specifies operations, their semantics, and the model and behavior associated to them
673 Examples are [DSP0223](#) and [DSP0200](#).
- 674 **3.57**
675 **optional**
676 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile leaves the decision to implement the designated
677 profile element to the implementation
678 See 5.8 for usage considerations, and 7.2 for implementation considerations.
- 679 **3.58**
680 **optional profile**
681 a profile referenced with the optional requirement level
- 682 **3.59**
683 **organization**
684 in this guide, refers to a consortium, standards group, company, or business entity creating a
685 management profile
- 686 **3.60**
687 **pattern**
688 specification of the permissible values for a property or parameter
689 See also the term "match", and for details see 6.13.
- 690 **3.61**
691 **pattern profile**
692 a design pattern consisting of some number of adaptations that is useful in the specification of referencing
693 profiles
694 For details, see 5.13.4.
- 695 **3.62**
696 **profile**
697 synonym for management profile
698 See 3.45.
- 699 **3.63**
700 **profile defined model**
701 a model of a management domain (or a subset of a management domain) defined by a profile that is
702 composed of class adaptations
703 For details, see 5.1.

- 704 **3.64**
705 **profile derivation**
706 a use of a referenced profile as the base profile. For details, see 5.8.2 and 5.14.1.
- 707 **3.65**
708 **profile element**
709 formal elements that this guide establishes to be specified by profiles
- 710 **3.66**
711 **profile implementation**
712 a subset of an implementation that realizes the requirements of a particular profile in a particular profile
713 implementation context
- 714 **3.67**
715 **profile implementation context**
716 a context in which a profile or an adaptation is implemented
717 For a complete definition, see 7.3.3.
- 718 **3.68**
719 **profile reference**
720 a named profile element that references another profile
721 For details, see 5.21.
- 722 **3.69**
723 **profile specification**
724 synonym for management profile specification
725 See 3.46.
- 726 **3.70**
727 **prohibited**
728 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile prohibits the implementation of the designated
729 profile element
730 See 5.8 for usage considerations, and 7.2 for implementation considerations.
- 731 **3.71**
732 **property requirement**
733 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on a property
734 exposed by the adapted class.
735 For details, see 5.19.14.
- 736 **3.72**
737 **referenced profile**
738 a profile that is referenced by another profile. For a complete definition, see 5.14
- 739 **3.73**
740 **referencing profile**
741 a profile that references another profile. For a complete definition, see 5.14.

- 742 **3.74**
743 **registry reference**
744 a named profile element referencing a message registry or a metric registry
745 For details, see 5.22.
- 746 **3.75**
747 **related profile**
748 deprecated synonym for referenced profile
- 749 **3.76**
750 **requirement level**
751 designator that indicates the requirement for implementing profile elements or referenced profiles
- 752 **3.77**
753 **schema**
754 a named set of classes with a single defining authority or owning organization
755 The classes in a schema have the same schema prefix in their class name. For a complete definition, see
756 [DSP0004](#).
- 757 NOTE DMTF defines two schemas: the Common Information Model (schema prefix CIM) and the Problem
758 Resolution Schema (schema prefix PRS)
- 759 **3.78**
760 **schema element**
761 generally, refers to schema elements as defined in [DSP0004](#)
762 In this guide, the term is used for the subset of schema elements that may be constrained by profiles:
763 classes (including association classes and indication classes), properties (including references), methods,
764 and parameters.
- 765 **3.79**
766 **scoping class adaptation**
767 a specifically designated class adaptation in a profile that is the algorithmic focal point for identifying
768 profile conformance when using the scoping class methodology
769 For a complete definition, see 5.14.4.4.
- 770 **3.80**
771 **scoped profile**
772 a profile that receives a scope provided by a scoping profile. Synonymous with component profile.
773 For details, see 5.14.4.
- 774 **3.81**
775 **scoping path**
776 an association traversal path between the central class adaptation and the scoping class adaptation
777 For details, see 5.14.4.5.
- 778 **3.82**
779 **scoping profile**
780 a referencing profile that provides a scope to a referenced profile by defining a central class adaptation
781 that is based on the scoping class adaptation defined by the referenced profile
782 For details, see 5.14.4.

- 783 **3.83**
784 **span of a class adaptation**
785 the directed acyclic graph that contains the class adaptation, all (direct or indirect) base adaptations of the
786 class adaptation, the adapted class, and all its superclasses
787 For a complete definition, see 5.19.2.
- 788 **3.84**
789 **state description**
790 a named profile element that describes of the state of an instance of (a subset of) the model defined by a
791 profile at a particular point in time
792 For a complete definition, see 5.23.
- 793 **3.85**
794 **subject profile**
795 a profile created or verified in conformance to this guide
- 796 **3.86**
797 **trivial class adaptation**
798 a class adaptation that does not add requirements beyond those defined by the adapted class and, if
799 defined, by its base adaptations
800 For details, see 6.15.7.4.
- 801 **3.87**
802 **use case**
803 a named profile element that defines an interaction of an external client and an implementation in the
804 execution of steps required to be performed in the realization of functionality defined in a profile
805 For details, see 5.24.

806 **4 Symbols and abbreviated terms**

- 807 Most of these symbols and abbreviated terms are also applicable to profile specifications.
- 808 NOTE A list of symbols and abbreviated terms to be included in profile specifications is provided in [DSP1000](#).
- 809 For the purposes of this guide, the following symbols and abbreviated terms apply, in addition to those
810 defined in [DSP0004](#) and [DSP0223](#):

- 811 **4.1**
812 **ACID**
813 atomicity, consistency, isolation, and durability
- 814 **4.2**
815 **CSD**
816 UML composite structure diagram
817 For details, see 6.9.2.2.
- 818 **4.3**
819 **PUG**
820 *Management Profile Usage Guide* (the usage guide for specifying profiles specified in this document,
821 DSP1001)

822 **4.4**
 823 **UFcT**
 824 User Friendly class Tag, as defined in [DSP0215](#)

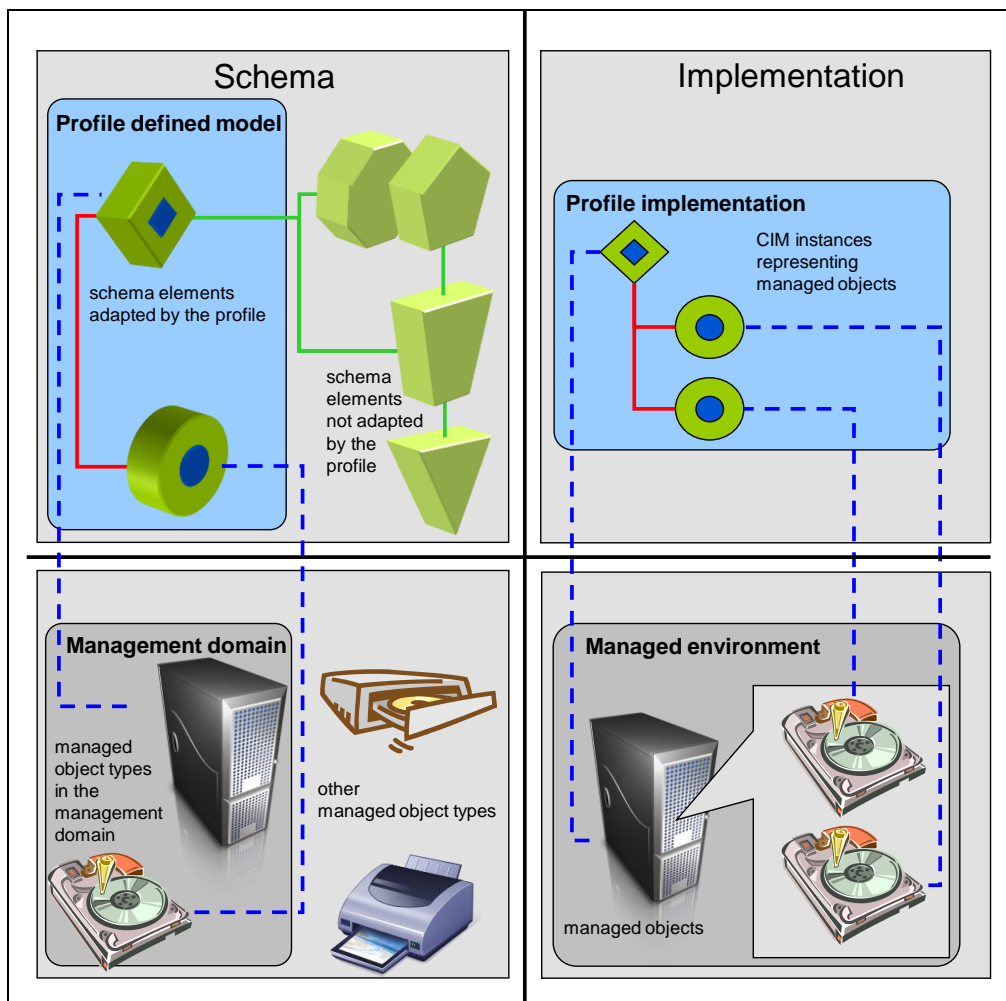
825 **4.5**
 826 **UFIT**
 827 User Friendly instance Tag, as defined in [DSP0215](#)

828 **5 Principle concepts**

829 This clause defines the principle concepts that are common to all profiles.

830 **5.1 Overview**

831 **Figure 1** illustrates the profile defined model and its relationship to the management domain, as well as a
 832 corresponding profile implementation and its relationship to a managed environment.



833

834

Figure 1 – Profile and management domain

835 The left side of **Figure 1** shows the profile defined model and its related management domain. Model and
836 behavior are defined by selecting, specializing, and sometimes constraining elements from a schema and
837 the set of operations for a particular purpose; in other words, the profile adapts elements from a schema
838 for a particular purpose. The management domain is composed of managed object types. The classes
839 adapted by a profile model aspects of these object types. A profile establishes a relationship between the
840 model and the management domain. In addition, a profile defines use cases on the model that illustrate
841 client-visible behavior.

842 The right side of **Figure 1** shows a profile implementation and a related managed environment. Each
843 profile implementation provides access to a set of related CIM instances to a CIM client. These CIM
844 instances represent corresponding managed objects in the managed environment and conform to the
845 client-visible management interfaces and behaviors defined in the profile. Note that the right side of
846 **Figure 1** shows only one profile implementation and only one related managed environment; however, in
847 reality, potentially multiple profile implementations coexist, and each profile implementation typically
848 provides management capabilities for multiple related managed environments.

849 **5.2 Management domain**

850 A profile describes a *management domain* by defining the set of *managed object types* that compose the
851 management domain. In addition, the profile may define requirements and constraints on the components
852 of the management domain.

853 A management domain is an area of work or field of activity. Commonalities in a management domain are
854 a set of common management requirements, a common terminology, and related functionality. Examples
855 of management domains are a computer system, system virtualization, or a file system.

856 Complex management domains may be subdivided into smaller management domains where each
857 subdomain narrows down the area of work or field of activity. For example, a subdivision of the file system
858 management domain might contain management subdomains, such as file access, file locking, or file
859 representation.

860 If a management domain is subdivided into a set of subdomains, these may be likewise covered by
861 separate profiles. This guide defines several types of profile relationships enabling this subdivision.

862 **5.3 Managed object type**

863 A *managed object type* is a conceptual generalization or type of manageable things in a management
864 domain. Examples of managed object types composing the computer system management domain are
865 system, device, or service. Examples of managed object types composing the file system management
866 domain are file, directory, access list, or lock.

867 Relationships may exist between managed object types. For example, in the file system management
868 domain directories are composed of files, and files may be linked to each other.

869 **5.4 Managed environment and managed objects**

870 A *managed environment* is a concrete occurrence of a management domain and is composed of
871 *managed objects*. For example, a managed environment within the file system management domain is a
872 concrete Linux ext3 file system that resides on some storage media and is composed of objects such as
873 the file system itself, its files, directories, links, access lists, or quotas. For a particular type of managed
874 environment (for example, Linux ext3 file systems) specific management instrumentation (such as a set of
875 commands, or an API) may exist that allow the inspection and manipulation of managed objects in
876 respective managed environments. For example, instances of the Linux ext3 file system in a desktop
877 installation may be inspected and manipulated through means of the Linux ext3 file system device
878 drivers.

879 Profiles are implemented for one or more types of managed environments. For example, for a profile
880 addressing the file system management domain one implementation might cover the Linux ext3 file
881 system and another separate implementation might cover the FAT file system and the Microsoft NTFS file
882 system.

883 5.5 Management Profile

884 A profile defines a management interface for a management domain. The semantics of that management
885 interface as well as the behavior of the managed objects in their managed environment are defined by a
886 model that is composed of a set of class adaptations. Each class adaptation defines a set of requirements
887 and constraints on the use of a class for a particular purpose. Class adaptations are defined in 5.19.

888 5.6 Relationships between profile definition and management domain

889 5.6.1 Profile defined mappings

890 A profile defines the following mappings:

- 891 • The mapping between managed object types and the class adaptations modeling (aspects of)
892 these managed object types and the relationships between them
893 This kind of mapping is established in profiles by means of defining the managed object types
894 that are exposed by the management domain addressed by the profile, and by further stating
895 the adaptations that model them, (including specific aspects and relationships); for details, see
896 5.16 and 5.19.1.
- 897 • The mapping between instances of managed objects in the managed environment and the
898 adaptation instances that model those managed objects and the relationships between them
899 This kind of mapping is specified in profiles by means of instance requirements stated as part
900 of the definition of each adaptation; for details, see 5.19.13.

901 These mappings have a substantial impact on the applicability of the profile and should be stated with
902 great care, particularly when specifying the exact set or subset of managed objects that are to be
903 represented by adaptation instances.

904 5.6.2 Existence and lifecycle of adaptation instances

905 In a managed environment the managed objects or relationships between them can potentially appear,
906 disappear, or change at any time.

907 For example, files in a file system are frequently created, deleted, or modified. Such changes may be
908 effected by means of the management interface defined by the profile as described in 5.6.3.

909 Recall that adaptation instances are instances of CIM classes that conform to the requirements of a
910 particular adaptation; see 7.2.7.

911 The *existence* of adaptation instances is a logical concept: A particular adaptation instance is defined to
912 exist in a namespace of a particular WBEM server exactly as long as the managed object that is
913 represented by that adaptation instance exists in the managed environment.

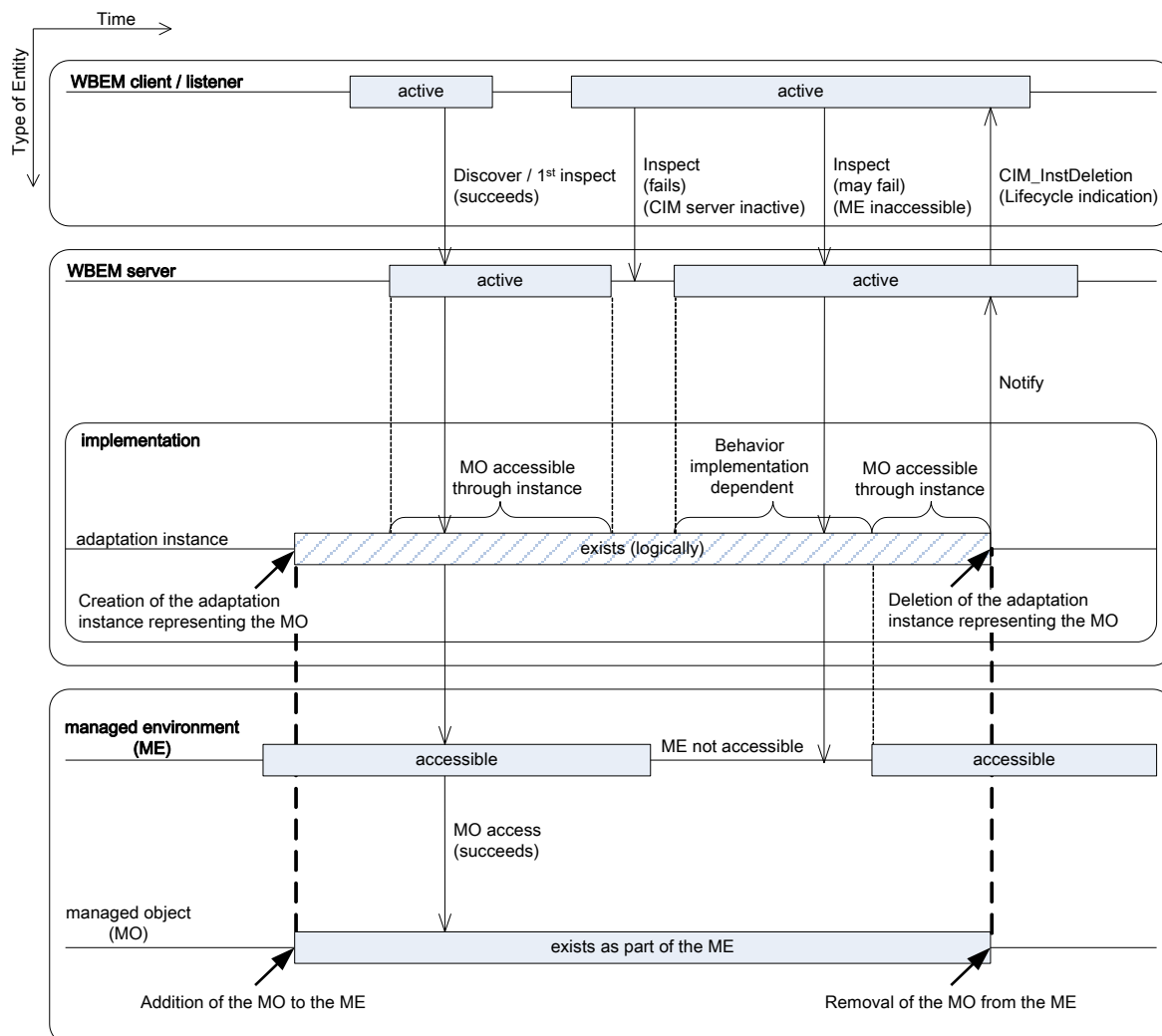
914 It is emphasized that the existence of adaptation instances is a *logical concept*; particularly, the existence
915 of an adaptation instance does not imply that the WBEM server is active or that the managed
916 environment containing the managed object representing the adaptation instance is accessible by the
917 implementation within the WBEM server. Consequently, existing instances are not required to be visible
918 to the clients all time.

919 NOTE One reason for defining the existence of adaptation instances as a logical concept independent from the
920 activity state of the related WBEM server is avoiding the re-creation of adaptation instances when the WBEM server
921 restarts that — among other consequences — would require the generation of respective lifecycle indications.

922 The *creation* of an adaptation instance is defined to occur when the represented managed object is
 923 added to the managed environment. This can occur if either a pre-existing managed object is added to
 924 the managed environment, or if a managed object is created within the managed environment. The
 925 former is typical for tangible managed objects such as disk drives or fans, while the latter is typical for
 926 intangible managed objects such as files, log entries or virtual systems. The creation of an adaptation
 927 instance is also the event that triggers the generation of a respective lifecycle indication; see 5.7.

928 The *deletion* of an adaptation instance is defined to occur when the represented managed object is
 929 removed from the managed environment. This occurs as a managed object such as a hardware
 930 component is removed from the managed environment, but also if a managed object such as a database
 931 record is deleted and thus no longer exists as part of the managed environment. The deletion of an
 932 adaptation instance is also the event that triggers the generation of a respective lifecycle indication; see
 933 5.7.

934 These interrelationships are detailed in Figure 2.



935

936

Figure 2 – Existence of adaptation instances

937 Figure 2 further details that the existence of an adaptation instance does not require that the WBE
 938 server for that the instance is active. This implies that an existing adaptation instance may not be
 939 accessible by clients. Various other reasons may also impede client access to adaptation instances, such

940 as for example the implementation not being able to access the managed object in the managed
941 environment.

942 All the information exposed by an adaptation instance originates from the represented managed object.
943 While a managed object is not accessible by the implementation, the representing adaptation instance(s)
944 should not expose imprecise, outdated, or otherwise unsynchronized information about the current state
945 of the managed object. In case of doubt an implementation should raise an error or otherwise indicate
946 that the represented managed object is not accessible, or that certain property values are not available;
947 for example, the special value Null can be used to indicate the absence of a value.

948 As a consequence, the only cause for a change in an adaptation instance is a respective change in the
949 represented managed object. It is emphasized that this is also the case if the change was caused by the
950 execution of a method on a CIM instance that represents that managed object; for details, see 5.6.3.

951 NOTE There is much flexibility in defining managed object types. For example, it is possible for a profile to define
952 managed object types such that configuration data is separated from functional data. That way an implementation
953 could be realized such that configuration data is kept separately in a database and would be accessible while the
954 database is accessible, whereas functional data would only be accessible if the functional part of a managed object is
955 accessible; however, if a client requests a complete adaptation instance, the previously mentioned restrictions on
956 exposing information apply also in this case with respect to the functional part.

957 Adaptation instances are inherently volatile. A profile intending to enable a client to continuously monitor
958 the state of a managed object existing in a managed environment has two possibilities:

- 959 • Require the client to continuously poll the information from the implementation.
960 In this situation the client could, for example, repeatedly invoke the `GetInstance ()` operation of
961 the adaptation instance representing the specific aspect being monitored. In a more
962 comfortable case the profile could adapt a class providing a specific method designed to return
963 information about any changes since the last poll.
- 964 • Model indications as described in 5.7.

965 5.6.3 Model effected control of managed objects in a managed environment

966 CIM initiated modifications on the model are only actable if the represented managed environment admits
967 such modifications. Profiles may define CIM-based control of managed objects in a managed
968 environment by assigning management domain specific semantics to methods or operations defined by
969 the model; for details, see 5.19.11.3 or 5.19.12.8. If such a method or operation is invoked, the
970 implementation issues requests to the affected managed object in the managed environment in order to
971 perform the profile defined semantics of the method or operation. The mechanisms applied for this
972 forwarding are implementation dependent. Depending on conditions that prevail in the managed
973 environment the request may or may not succeed.

974 Adaptation instances represent aspects of managed objects in the managed environment. This includes
975 reflecting the state of the managed object after completing changes effected through the model, such as
976 the invocation of methods or operations. However, after, or coincident with, such a change, other actions
977 not effected through the model can also affect the state and are represented by the adaptation instance.
978 This situation drives the need for profiles to define the means that indicate completion for model effected
979 changes.

980 5.7 Events and indications

981 An event is an observable occurrence of a phenomenon of interest. Profiles specify events as part of
982 indications. For details, see [DSP1054](#).

983 Indications model notifications about events. Notifications about events that are related to CIM instances
984 representing particular managed objects are modeled as *lifecycle indications*; notifications about other
985 kinds of events are modeled through *alert indications*; for details, see [DSP1054](#).

986 **5.8 Requirement levels**

987 **5.8.1 General**

988 This subclause defines the usage of requirement levels by profiles. Requirement levels designate the
989 requirement for implementing profile elements.

990 Occasionally individual requirement levels may be defined for specific purposes, such as the
991 presentation, initialization, or modification of adaptation instances.

992 The following requirement levels are defined:

- 993 • Conditional exclusive, as defined in 3.19
- 994 • Conditional, as defined in 3.18
- 995 • Derivation, as defined in 3.23
- 996 • Mandatory, as defined in 3.47
- 997 • Optional, as defined in 3.57
- 998 • Prohibited, as defined in 3.70

999 In many cases the requirements defined in a profile for a profile element are based on, refer to, extend, or
1000 further constrain an entity that is defined outside of the profile. For example, an adaptation defined in a
1001 profile adapts a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose; or a registry reference refers to a
1002 registry of certain things such as messages or metrics, which are applied or used other definitions within
1003 the profile.

1004 It is emphasized that dependencies on other profile elements defined in the same or in other profiles, as
1005 well as dependencies on referenced definitions for example from referenced schemas or registries, may
1006 impose additional implementation requirements. The determination of implementation requirements and
1007 the effects of requirement levels with respect to the implementation requirements of profile elements are
1008 described in clause 6.

1009 NOTE Requirement levels are formally defined only for the designation of profile elements (see 5.19.6). However,
1010 profiles may state other provisions such as instance requirements or indication-generation requirements using
1011 normative language (primarily terms such as "shall", "may", "should", etc.).

1012 **5.8.2 Usage of the "derivation" requirement level**

1013 A subject referencing profile should designate a profile reference as derivation if the referencing profile is
1014 based on and substitutable for the referenced profile.

1015 **5.8.3 Usage of the "mandatory" requirement level**

1016 A subject profile should designate a profile element as mandatory if it unconditionally requires the
1017 implementation of the designated profile element. Clients can rely on mandatory profile elements being
1018 implemented after they have determined that the subject profile is implemented.

1019 **5.8.4 Usage of the "optional" requirement level**

1020 A subject profile should designate a profile element as optional if it leaves the decision to implement the
1021 profile element to the implementation. In other words, the implementation of an optional profile element is
1022 considered auxiliary or complementary from the perspective of the subject profile.

1023 A CIM-based discovery mechanism (see 5.10) should be defined that enables clients — after having
1024 determined that the subject profile is implemented — to determine whether the optional profile element is

1025 implemented. A CIM-based discovery mechanism (see 5.10) shall be defined if other profile elements are
1026 defined as conditional or conditional exclusive on the optional profile element.

1027 A profile that intends to define multiple optional profile elements that are useful to clients only as a group
1028 should define an optional feature (see 5.20.4) and define the elements as conditional on the
1029 implementation of that optional feature.

1030 **5.8.5 Usage of the "conditional" requirement level**

1031 A subject profile should designate a profile element as conditional if it requires the implementation of the
1032 designated profile element only under certain conditions, and otherwise leaves the decision to implement
1033 the designated profile element to the implementation.

1034 For any profile element designated as conditional, the condition shall be defined using one of the
1035 mechanisms defined in 5.9.

1036 A CIM-based discovery mechanism (see 5.10) shall be defined that enables clients — after having
1037 determined that the subject profile is implemented — to determine whether the conditional profile element
1038 is available. The discovery mechanism may be defined indirectly, such that the discovery mechanism for
1039 one conditional profile element by means of conditional dependencies is delegated to that of another
1040 profile element; particularly, this is the case with feature implementation conditions (see 5.9.3) and
1041 feature discovery (see 5.20.6).

1042 **5.8.6 Usage of the "conditional exclusive" requirement level**

1043 A subject profile should designate a profile element as conditional exclusive if it requires the
1044 implementation of the designated profile element only under certain conditions, and otherwise prohibits
1045 the implementation of the designated profile element.

1046 NOTE This is different from conditional because a conditional profile element may be implemented even if the
1047 condition is not true.

1048 For any profile element designated as conditional exclusive, the condition shall be defined using one of
1049 the mechanisms defined in 5.9.

1050 A CIM-based discovery mechanism (see 5.10) shall be defined that enables clients — after having
1051 determined that the subject profile is implemented — to determine whether the conditional exclusive
1052 profile element is available. The discovery mechanism may be defined indirectly, such that the discovery
1053 mechanism for one conditional exclusive profile element by means of conditional dependencies is
1054 delegated to that of another profile element; particularly, this is the case with feature implementation
1055 conditions (see 5.9.3) and feature discovery (see 5.20.6).

1056 **5.8.7 Usage of the "prohibited" requirement level**

1057 A subject profile should designate a profile element as prohibited if it prohibits the implementation of the
1058 designated profile element. Prohibiting the implementation of certain profile elements might be necessary
1059 for example to suppress specific behaviors under certain conditions, or in cases where, from a selection
1060 of possible variants, only one is to be implemented.

1061 **5.9 Implementation conditions**

1062 This subclause defines mechanisms for the definition of conditions. A condition determines whether a
1063 conditional or conditional exclusive profile element must be implemented.

1064 **5.9.1 General**

1065 As defined in 5.8.5, profiles shall define a condition for any conditional or conditional exclusive elements.

1066 Profiles shall apply only the mechanisms defined in 5.9 for specifying such conditions. Subclauses 5.9.2
1067 to 5.9.7 define basic types of conditions. Complex conditions may be expressed as combinations of basic
1068 conditions using the Boolean operators AND, OR, NOT, XOR and IMPLIES.

1069 Some of these mechanisms are deprecated. New profiles and revisions of existing profiles should not use
1070 such deprecated mechanisms.

1071 NOTE 1 Conditions control conditional implementation requirements. Conditions are resolved at implementation time
1072 and are complied with by implementers as they implement conditional and conditional exclusive elements in the case
1073 where the condition is true. Conditions themselves are not generally directly observable by clients; however, the
1074 effect of implementing conditional elements is observable by clients. Discovery mechanisms are CIM-based
1075 mechanisms that are specifically designed to provide for the run-time discovery of optional, conditional, or conditional
1076 exclusive profile elements; for details, see 5.10.

1077 NOTE 2 Conditions are not to be confused with implementation decisions made by profile implementers. A condition
1078 does not need to be based on such decisions. For example, a condition might be tied to circumstances in the type of
1079 managed environment addressed by an implementation, not leaving any room for a decision to be made.

1080 **5.9.2 Profile implementation condition**

1081 A profile may specify a condition based on whether a referenced profile is implemented. This kind of
1082 condition is called a *profile implementation condition*.

1083 A profile implementation conditional is True if the referenced profile is implemented; otherwise, a profile
1084 implementation conditional is False.

1085 For example, an Example Fan profile might model fan management. This Example Fan profile might
1086 require that the implementation of the Associators() operation for its adaptation of the CIM_Fan class for
1087 traversing to CIM_Sensor instances representing attached fan speed sensors is conditional on the
1088 implementation of an Example Sensors profile for those speed sensors. In this example, an
1089 implementation decision is made at the level of implementing the Example Sensors profile. The profile
1090 implementation conditional defined in the Example Fan profile determines the consequences of such
1091 profile implementation for the elements adapted in the Example Fan profile.

1092 NOTE 1 There is no restriction imposed by this condition that the referenced profile needs to be implemented in the
1093 same WBEM server as the referencing profile.

1094 NOTE 2 Implementing a referenced profile for the purpose of conforming to a profile implementation condition in a
1095 referencing profile is a design-time decision and is not to be confused with detecting profile implementations at
1096 runtime. The latter is defined in [DSP1033](#).

1097 **5.9.3 Feature implementation condition**

1098 A profile may specify a condition based on the implementation of a feature (see 5.20). This kind of
1099 condition is called a *feature implementation condition*.

1100 A feature implementation condition is True if the feature is implemented as part of a profile
1101 implementation; otherwise, a feature implementation condition is False. For details about feature
1102 granularity levels, see 5.20.5.

1103 For example, an Example Fan profile might model fan management. This Example Fan profile might
1104 define a "FanSpeedSensor" feature. Some elements adapted by the Example Fan profile might be
1105 defined as conditional on the implementation of the feature. Likewise, an Example Sensors profile
1106 modeling the use of sensors might be referenced by the Example Fan profile, on the condition that the
1107 FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented. In this example, an implementation decision is made at the
1108 level of implementing the feature. The feature implementation conditions defined in the Example Fan
1109 profile determine the consequences of implementing the feature, in this case the implementation of the
1110 elements adapted by the Example Fan profile and related to fan speed sensing, and implementation of
1111 the Example Sensors profile in the context of fan speed sensors.

1112 NOTE The way this example defines an implementation option in a profile is different from how the example
1113 described in 5.9.2 defines it; in this case, there is no implementation difference between using a profile
1114 implementation condition or a feature implementation condition. However, the use of a feature implementation
1115 condition is preferred because it makes explicit a requirement that a set of related elements be implemented as a
1116 unit. Additionally, the profile is required to provide a means of detecting that a feature has been implemented; for
1117 details, see 5.20.6. This generally reduces the number of variations in implementations and therefore the complexity
1118 of clients that must accommodate those variations.

1119 **5.9.4 Class adaptation implementation condition**

1120 A profile may specify a condition based on the implementation of a non-mandatory class adaptation (see
1121 5.19). This kind of condition is called a *class adaptation implementation condition*.

1122 NOTE The decision to implement an optional class adaptation — or a conditional class adaptation in the case
1123 where the condition is not true — is made by an implementer; consequently, requirements related to other elements
1124 specified by a profile can be conditioned on the implementation of the class adaptation. A class adaptation
1125 implementation condition is not necessarily directly observable by a client; for example, consider the case where no
1126 instances of the class adaptation exist.

1127 A class adaptation implementation condition is True if the class adaptation is implemented; otherwise, a
1128 class adaptation implementation condition is False.

1129 For example, the implementation of fan redundancy might be defined in an Example Fan profile such that
1130 the adaptation of the CIM_RedundancyGroup class is defined as optional, and the definitions of any other
1131 profile elements related to fan redundancy would then be defined as conditional on the implementation of
1132 the adaptation of the CIM_RedundancyGroup class.

1133 NOTE In the example, the requirements for some related profile elements are conditioned on the implementation of
1134 a class adaptation, in effect causing the related profile elements to be implemented if the decision to implement the
1135 class adaptation is made initially; in this situation the definition of a feature along with respective feature
1136 implementation conditions on the class adaptation and the related profile elements is considered a better choice.

1137 **DEPRECATED**

1138 **5.9.5 Instance existence condition**

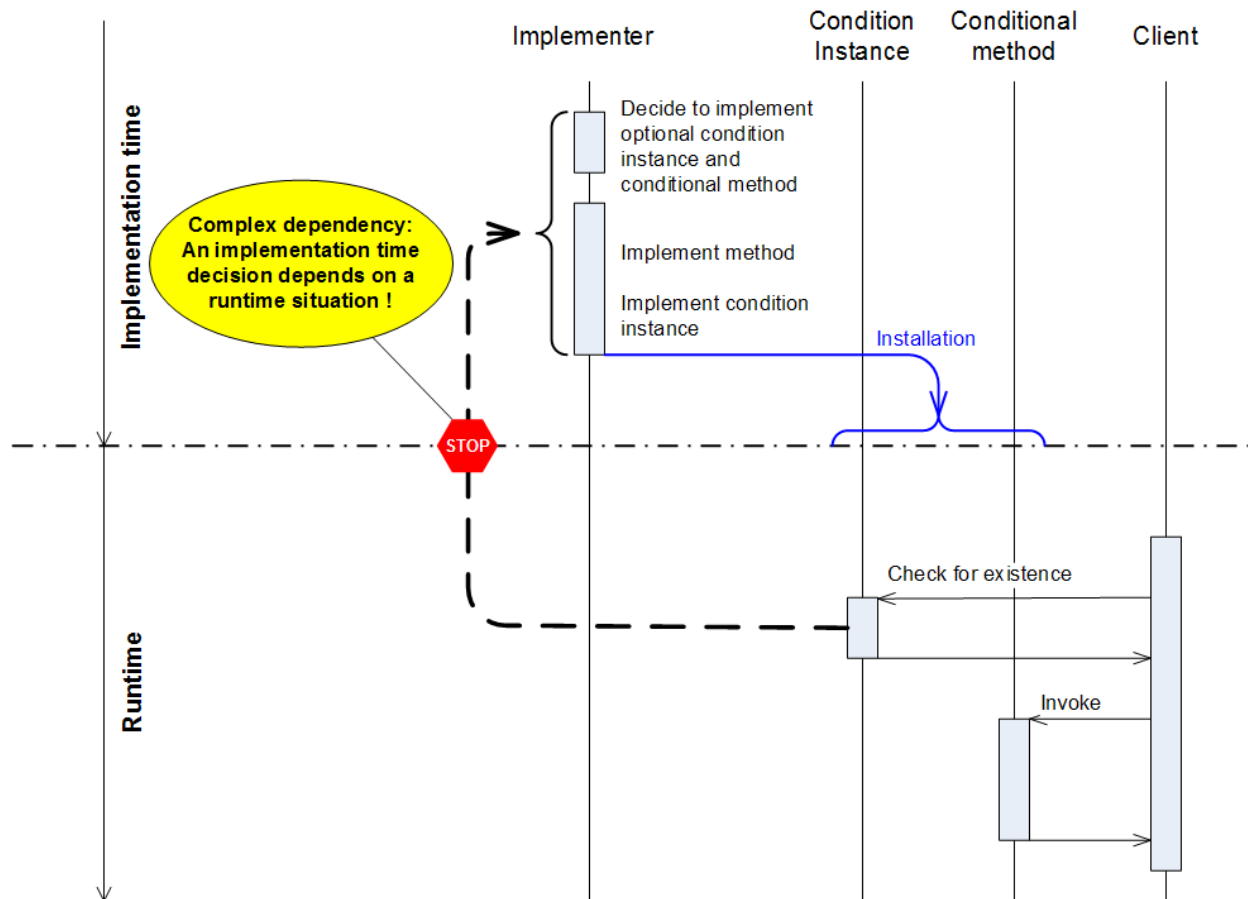
1139 Instance existence conditions are deprecated in favor of the discovery through identified or related
1140 adaptation instances (see 5.10.2 and 5.10.3); for the rationale, see the "Deprecation notice" below.

1141 A profile may specify a condition based on the existence of a particular CIM instance. This kind of
1142 condition is called an *instance existence condition*.

1143 An instance existence condition is True if the CIM instance as defined by the profile exists; otherwise, the
1144 instance existence condition is False. The profile shall define a discovery mechanism for the CIM
1145 instance; for details, see 5.10.

1146 For example, a profile that optionally adapts a specialization of the CIM_Service class that has several
1147 domain specific service methods might state that the CIM_HostedService association that models the
1148 relationship between the service and the system hosting the service shall only be implemented if the
1149 CIM_Service instance exists.

1150 NOTE The concept of instance existence conditions is problematic because it implies that the implementation of
1151 conditional profile elements (such as adaptations) depends on the existence of CIM instances. Thus a design time
1152 decision (such as implementing an adaptation) depends on a situation that is the result of an implementation and is
1153 observable at runtime only (such as the existence of a CIM instance); consequently, as detailed in Figure 3, the
1154 determination of the condition requires the implementer to abstractly anticipate the run-time situation. In other words,
1155 the implementer who needs to make a design-time decision (for example, implement the adaptation) would have to
1156 figure out potential run-time situations (for example, the existence of CIM instances) that are only the result of the
1157 implementation; this is considered a cumbersome and potentially error-prone exercise.



1158

1159 **Figure 3 – Complexity when an implementation decision depends on a run-time element**

1160 **Deprecation notice:** Instance existence conditions are an unnecessary complication and indirection of
 1161 the decision process for implementing a conditional or conditional exclusive element. New profiles and
 1162 revisions of existing profiles should use feature implementation conditions rather than instance existence
 1163 conditions.

1164 **NOTE** It is emphasized that the deprecation of instance existence conditions does not prohibit profiles from
 1165 specifying the existence of instances as a means for clients to detect the result of design-time decisions. On the
 1166 contrary, this guide requires profiles to define discovery mechanisms for the run-time discovery of conditional or
 1167 conditional exclusive profile elements (see 5.10). This significantly differs from instance existence conditions insofar
 1168 as now the design-time decision (for example, the implementation of an optional feature) is made first, and as a
 1169 consequence the implementation is required to provide discovery elements (such as a specific CIM instance) that
 1170 indicate the implementation of the conditional or conditional exclusive element to clients.

1171 **DEPRECATED**

1172

1173 **DEPRECATED**

1174 **5.9.6 Property value condition**

1175 Property value conditions are deprecated in favor of discovery through specific property values (see
 1176 5.10.4); for the rationale, see the "Deprecation notice" below.

1177 A profile may specify a condition based on the value of a property of a particular CIM instance. This kind
1178 of condition is called a *property value condition*.

1179 A property value condition is True if the CIM instance exists and the values of one or more properties in
1180 the instance match a pattern defined by the profile; otherwise, the property value condition is False.

1181 For example, a profile that adapts a specialization of the CIM_Service class that defines several methods
1182 might in addition adapt a specialization of the CIM_Capabilities class that defines an array property and a
1183 corresponding value set, where each element of the value set designates one of the methods from the
1184 CIM_Service class. Implementation of a particular method would be required if the corresponding value is
1185 set as an element of the array property.

1186 NOTE 1 The concept of property value conditions is problematic because it implies that the implementation of
1187 conditional elements (such as adaptations) depends on values of properties in CIM instances. Thus a design-time
1188 decision (such as implementing a class adaptation) depends on a situation that is the result of an implementation and
1189 is observable at runtime only (such as a certain value of a property in a CIM instance); consequently, similar to the
1190 situation detailed in Figure 3, the determination of the condition requires the implementer to abstractly anticipate the
1191 run-time situation. In other words, the implementer who needs to make the design-time decision (for example,
1192 implement the adaptation) would have to figure out potential runtime situations (for example, property values in CIM
1193 instances) that are only the result of an implementation; this is considered a cumbersome and potentially error-prone
1194 exercise.

1195 **Deprecation notice:** Property value conditions are an unnecessary complication and indirection of the
1196 decision process for implementing a conditional or conditional exclusive element. New profiles and
1197 revisions of existing profiles should use feature implementation conditions rather than property value
1198 conditions.

1199 It is emphasized that the deprecation of property value conditions does not prohibit profiles from
1200 specifying property values as a means for clients to detect the result of design time decisions. On the
1201 contrary, this guide requires profiles to define discovery mechanisms for the run-time discovery of
1202 conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements (see 5.10). This significantly differs from property
1203 value conditions insofar as now the design time decision (for example, the implementation of an optional
1204 class adaptation) is made first, and as a consequence the implementation is required to provide discovery
1205 elements (such as a specific property value in a CIM instance) that enable clients to detect the
1206 implementation of the conditional or conditional exclusive element.

1207 **DEPRECATED**

1208 **DEPRECATED**

1209 Managed environment conditions are deprecated in favor of always requiring a condition to be based on
1210 the existence or value of a modeled element.

1211 **5.9.7 Managed environment condition**

1212 A profile may specify a condition based on circumstances in the managed environment. This kind of
1213 condition is called a *managed environment condition*.

1214 Managed environment conditions are specified in profiles using plain text that refers to the managed
1215 environment and its managed object types.

1216 A managed environment condition is True if the conditions specified in the text are True for the particular
1217 type of managed environment for which the profile is implemented; otherwise, the managed environment
1218 condition is False.

1219 For example, a profile addressing the management domain of storage host bus adapters might adapt the
1220 CIM_FCPort class modeling fiber channel host SCSI initiator ports. The profile might state that the

1221 implementation of its adaptations of the CIM_AlarmDevice class and of the CIM_AssociatedAlarm
1222 association are conditional on the condition that the type of managed environment for which the profile is
1223 implemented provides a client callable interface to blink an LED for those fiber channel ports that are
1224 represented by instances of the CIM_FCPort class.

1225 NOTE 1 Managed environment conditions allow the formulation of conditions in profiles such that an implementation
1226 of the profile is required to implement the conditional element only if respective means are available to the
1227 implementation in the particular type of managed environment. In the example above, the implementation of the
1228 CIM_AlarmDevice class makes sense only if the implementation has the means to blink the LEDs.

1229 NOTE 2 Of course managed environment conditions are only testable using white box testing where the test code
1230 also has access to specific means to test the managed environment condition. Ideally these means would be different
1231 from those used by a profile implementation.

1232 **Deprecation notice:** Managed environment conditions are an unnecessary complication and indirection
1233 of the decision process for implementing a conditional or conditional exclusive element. New profiles and
1234 revisions of existing profiles should use feature implementation conditions rather than managed
1235 environment conditions.

1236 NOTE It is emphasized that the deprecation of mandatory environment conditions does not prohibit profiles from
1237 specifying the environmental conditions as a means for clients to detect the result of environmental decisions.
1238 However, if discovery of such conditions is not covered by the modeled environment, then the means of detection is
1239 necessarily outside the scope of the profile and is likely to not be interoperable. Conditions based on modeled
1240 elements is recommended, for instance using features.

1241 **DEPRECATED**

1242 **5.10 Discovery mechanisms**

1243 **5.10.1 General**

1244 Discovery mechanisms enable clients to discover whether optional, conditional, or conditional exclusive
1245 profile elements are implemented, or are available in context of other profile elements. A discovery
1246 mechanism is a CIM-based mechanism that yields a Boolean result.

1247 It is highly recommended that profiles define discovery mechanisms for optional (see 5.8.4), conditional
1248 (see 5.8.5) or conditional exclusive (see 5.8.6) profile elements.

1249 **5.10.2 Discovery through an identified adaptation instance**

1250 For this discovery mechanism the subject profile needs to define how to identify particular adaptation
1251 instances, for example by requiring specific property values. If an instance matching the profile defined
1252 identification exists, the discovery mechanism yields True; otherwise, False.

1253 An example is an instance of an adaptation of the CIM_RegisteredProfile class that represents the
1254 registration of a subject profile (for details on profile registration, see [DSP1033](#)). Clients can discover that
1255 instance by filtering existing instances for values of the identification properties defined by the subject
1256 profile, such as the RegisteredName, RegisteredOrganization, and RegisteredVersion properties.

1257 **5.10.3 Discovery through a related adaptation instance**

1258 For this discovery mechanism, the subject profile needs to define an association path from a subject
1259 adaptation instance (in context of which the discoverable implementation variant is available) to a related
1260 adaptation instance. If the related instance is reachable by traversing the defined association path from
1261 the subject adaptation instance, the discovery mechanism yields True; otherwise, False. Note that the
1262 discoverable implementation variant does not necessarily have to be available in direct context of the
1263 subject adaptation instance itself, but instead may apply to elements that are related to the subject
1264 adaptation instance.

1265 For example, an Example Port profile could define a PortController adaptation of the CIM_PortController
1266 class modeling port controllers, a PortErrorLED adaptation of the CIM_AlarmDevice class modeling a
1267 blinkable LED that is capable of signaling an error or a port controller, and an AssociatedLED adaptation
1268 of the CIM_AssociatedAlarm association modeling the relationship between a port controller and its error
1269 indication LED. Clients can discover whether optional error indication LEDs are installed for a particular
1270 port controller by resolving the CIM_AssociatedAlarm association, starting from the PortController
1271 instance representing that port controller, for CIM_AlarmDevice instances; if such an instance exists, a
1272 client can rely on that optional error indicator LEDs are installed for the port controller.

1273 **5.10.4 Implementation discovery through specific property values**

1274 This discovery mechanism is applicable for a subject instance itself, or as extension to a discovery
1275 mechanisms for an identified instance or a related instance. For such instances, the profile defines
1276 specific property values; only if the instance exists and exhibits these specific property values, the
1277 discovery mechanism yields True; otherwise, it yields False.

1278 For example, an Example Fan profile might define a FanCapabilities adaptation of the
1279 CIM_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities class, and associate that with the Fan adaptation by means of
1280 an adaptation of the CIM_ElementCapabilities association. The Example Fan profile might further define
1281 that the value of the ElementNameEditSupported property shall have the value True if the modification of
1282 the ElementName property in the related Fan instance is implemented. Thus a client can - by inspecting
1283 the value of the ElementNameEditSupported property in a FanCapabilities instance associated with a Fan
1284 instance – discover that the modification of the ElementName property in the Fan instance is
1285 implemented.

1286 **5.11 Profile identification**

1287 This subclause defines the elements that identify a profile.

1288 **5.11.1 General**

1289 A profile shall uniquely identify itself through a registered profile name (see 5.11.2), version (see 5.11.3),
1290 and organization (see 5.11.4).

1291 NOTE Profile identification identifies a specific version of a profile, not that of a profile implementation. Within one
1292 WBEM server there may be multiple profile implementations of the same profile version.

1293 **5.11.2 Registered profile name**

1294 The registered profile name should provide end-user recognition and should not include CIM class
1295 names.

1296 The registered profile name shall be unique within the defining organization.

1297 The registered profile name shall not be changed in any future version of the profile.

1298 The registered profile name shall not include the word "profile". However, in normal profile text references
1299 to other profiles should append the word "profile" to the registered profile name. For example, a profile
1300 referencing another profile whose value of the registered profile name attribute is "System Virtualization"
1301 would use text such as "If the System Virtualization profile (see DSP1042) is implemented, then ..."

1302 NOTE 1 This rule is for references to profiles in normal profile text. It is to be distinguished from the rules for
1303 referencing *specification documents* (including profile specification documents), as established by the "Document
1304 conventions" of this guide. References to specification documents typically only appear in the "Normative references"
1305 and in the "Bibliography" clauses of a profile. For example, when referring to the profile specification document that
1306 contains the definition of version 1.0 of the System Virtualization profile and that is titled "System Virtualization
1307 Profile", that profile specification document would have to be referenced as DMTF DSP1042, *System Virtualization
1308 Profile 1.0* in the "Normative references" clause.

1309 It is important to realize that the definition of a profile is different from a document that contains that definition. For
1310 example, the definition of the System Virtualization profile could be contained in the document with the number DMTF
1311 DSP1042 in the form of a profile specification. Likewise, it could be contained in the document with the number DMTF
1312 DSP6042 in the form of a machine readable profile (see [DSP8028](#)).

1313 NOTE 2 A helpful convention applied by many profile specification documents (and by this guide) when referring to a
1314 profile in normal text is appending a phrase such as "(see <docnum>)" after a first reference to a profile within a
1315 subclause, where <docnum> is an internal hyperlink. The hyperlink is named as the document number of the
1316 referenced document, and links to the entry in the "Normative references" clause that refers to the document that
1317 contains the definition of the referenced profile.

1318 **5.11.3 Registered profile version**

1319 The registered profile version shall be the full version of the subject profile. The version shall be defined
1320 following the rules for versioning DMTF specifications defined in [DSP4014](#).

1321 DMTF Standard versions of a profile shall specify the major version identifier, the minor version identifier
1322 and the update identifier for the registered profile version. Work-in-progress versions of a profile should in
1323 addition specify the draft level in order to enable the distinction of implementation of work-in-progress
1324 versions from DMTF Standard versions.

1325 **5.11.4 Registered organization name**

1326 The registered organization name shall be the name of the organization that is publishing the profile. For
1327 profiles that are published by DMTF, the registered organization name shall be "DMTF".

1328 **5.11.5 Organizational contact**

1329 A profile shall identify the organizational unit that is the contact for the profile. For profiles owned by
1330 DMTF, details are defined in [DSP4014](#).

1331 **5.12 Schema reference**

1332 This subclause defines the elements of a reference to a schema.

1333 **5.12.1 General**

1334 A profile shall reference each schema that defines classes adapted by the profile. Each schema
1335 reference shall state the schema name (see 5.12.3), the schema version (see 5.12.2), and the schema
1336 organization (see 5.12.4), unless default values apply.

1337 **5.12.2 Schema version**

1338 The schema version shall be stated with the major version identifier, the minor version identifier and, if
1339 needed, the update identifier. The schema version should refer to the earliest version of the schema that
1340 meets the requirements of the profile. Regardless of whether an update identifier is stated, the latest
1341 published update version with the stated major and minor version identifier is referenced, as defined in
1342 [DSP4014](#); in other words, while an update identifier identifies the minimally required update version, it
1343 shall be interpreted as referring to the latest update version published after the minimally required update
1344 version.

1345 **5.12.3 Schema name**

1346 The schema name shall refer to the schema by the name that the owning organization assigned to the
1347 schema. The specification of this attribute is optional only in the case where only one schema is
1348 referenced; if not specified in this case, the default schema name is "CIM".

1349 5.12.4 Schema organization

1350 The schema organization shall refer to the organization that owns the schema. The specification of this
1351 attribute is optional only in the case where only one schema organization is referenced; if not specified in
1352 this case, the default schema organization is "DMTF".

1353 5.12.5 Schema experimental flag

1354 Profiles may reference schemas that are designated as experimental by the organization that defines the
1355 schema. A reference to an experimental schema shall be marked as experimental.

1356 NOTE See 6.7 for rules for the specification of experimental content.

1357 5.13 Profile categories

1358 5.13.1 General

1359 As pointed out in 5.2, complex management domains typically can be subdivided into smaller
1360 management domains where each subdomain narrows down the area of work or field of activity. In order
1361 to reflect this subdivision, three categories of profiles are defined: autonomous profiles, component
1362 profiles, and pattern profiles.

1363 5.13.2 Autonomous profiles

1364 An autonomous profile defines an autonomous and self-contained management interface for a
1365 management domain. An autonomous profile may be defined without relationships to other profiles
1366 (standalone) or may be defined with relationships to other profiles that as a set define a management
1367 interface for a complete management domain.

1368 An autonomous profile:

- 1369 • Shall define an adaptation that is both a central class adaptation and a scoping class
1370 adaptation
- 1371 • Shall specify a profile reference to the Profile Registration Profile ([DSP1033](#))

1372 5.13.3 Component profiles

1373 A component profile defines a management interface for a subset or special aspect of a management
1374 domain. A component profile is not autonomous or self-contained and must be implemented in the
1375 context of an autonomous profile.

1376 A component profile:

- 1377 • Shall define a unique adaptation that is a central class adaptation
- 1378 • Shall define a unique adaptation that is a scoping class adaptation
- 1379 • Shall specify a profile reference to the Profile Registration Profile ([DSP1033](#))

1380 In most cases it is possible and desirable to specify a component profile independent of its use in the
1381 context of a particular referencing profile, enabling reuse of the component profile in the context of many
1382 possible referencing profiles.

1383 For example, an autonomous profile addressing systems might reference a component profile for the
1384 purpose of addressing network ports in systems. The same component profile might be referenced by
1385 another autonomous profile that addresses network switches, in this case for the purpose of addressing
1386 switch ports.

1387 **Experimental**

1388 **5.13.4 Pattern profiles**

1389 A pattern profile defines a management interface of a subset or special aspect of a management domain.
1390 In most cases it is possible and desirable to specify a pattern profile independent of its use in the context
1391 of a particular referencing profile, thus enabling reuse of the pattern profile in the context of many
1392 possible referencing profiles.

1393 A pattern profile:

- 1394 • Shall define a central class adaptation
- 1395 • Shall not define a scoping class adaptation
- 1396 • Shall not specify a profile reference to the Profile Registration Profile ([DSP1033](#))

1397 As a consequence, a pattern profile is not independently discoverable and shall always be incorporated
1398 by reference (see 5.21).

1399 If a pattern profile references an autonomous profile or a component profile, (see 5.13.2 or 5.13.3), a
1400 profile that references the pattern profile is responsible for assuring that the requirements of the Profile
1401 Registration Profile ([DSP1033](#)) are met for each such referenced profile.

1402 **Experimental**

1403 **5.14 Profile references**

1404 **5.14.1 General**

1405 Profiles may be related through profile references that specify derivation (5.14.3) or usage (5.14.4)
1406 relationships. In both, the requirements of the referenced profile are incorporated into those of the
1407 referencing profile.

1408 Because of the additional requirements imposed by each referenced profile, a profile should only
1409 reference other profiles that are essential to the management domain of the referencing profile.

1410 **5.14.2 Profile element propagation**

1411 **5.14.2.1 Management domain propagation**

1412 A referencing profile may address a management domain that may be restricted, expanded, or
1413 unchanged with respect to the management domains addressed by its (direct or indirect) referenced
1414 profiles. For example, if a referenced profile applies to the management domain of network port
1415 management, a referencing profile may restrict that to the management of Ethernet network ports.

1416 The management interface defined by referenced profiles completely becomes a part of the interface
1417 defined by the referencing profile for its management domain. This rule ensures that clients exploiting the
1418 management interface as defined by a referenced profile can interact with a profile implementation of a
1419 referencing profile to the same extent as with a profile implementation of the referenced profile.

1420 A referencing profile may define extensions beyond the management interface defined by referenced
1421 profile.

1422 5.14.2.2 Constraint propagation

1423 A referencing profile inherits constraints on profile elements from its (direct or indirect) referenced profiles.
1424 More specifically, if profile elements defined in referenced profiles are not redefined in the referencing
1425 profile, the definitions of the referenced profiles apply without changes. Also, if a derived profile redefines
1426 profile elements defined in its referenced profiles, the constraints defined in the referenced profiles apply
1427 for the redefined profile elements as stated in the referenced profiles and without being restated by the
1428 derived profile.

1429 A derived profile may specify additional constraints; in this case, the additional constraints shall not
1430 violate the inherited constraints.

1431 The effects of this rule are different with respect to data sent or received by an implementation. For
1432 example, if a referenced profile requires an output parameter to have only the values "4", "5", or "6",
1433 definitions in the derived profile are restricted to this value set, but are allowed to reduce that to any
1434 subset, such as "4" and "6". However, in the case of an input parameter, the derived profile is not allowed
1435 to further reduce the value set, because a client written against the referenced profile may use all values
1436 as defined by the referenced profile.

1437 Consequently, there are rules for extending or reducing the value set for input/output parameters and
1438 return values in a derived profile; see 5.19.1. Likewise, this applies to properties that are readable and
1439 writable.

1440 NOTE A profile implementation of a derived profile is required to satisfy the requirements of all its (direct and
1441 indirect) referenced profiles. Thus, a client written against the management interface defined by a referenced profile
1442 also works with a profile implementation of a referencing profile. Implementation requirements are detailed in
1443 clause 6.

1444 5.14.2.3 Requirement level propagation

1445 A referencing profile inherits profile elements with the same requirement level as that defined by its (direct
1446 or indirect) referenced profiles; this means that profile elements defined in referenced profiles are
1447 considered part of a derived profile with the same requirement level, without requiring a new definition in
1448 the derived profile.

1449 A derived profile may redefine optional profile elements of its referenced profiles as conditional,
1450 mandatory, or prohibited, and may redefine conditional profile elements of its referenced profiles as
1451 mandatory.

1452 A derived profile may redefine conditional profile elements of its referenced profiles as conditional. In this
1453 case, the condition in the derived profile shall be satisfied if the condition in the referenced profile is
1454 satisfied.

1455 Example Consider a referenced profile that specifies an element is conditionally mandatory if either the X feature
1456 or the Y feature is implemented. In this example, the referencing derived profile is not to be allowed to narrow the
1457 condition to require the conditional profile element only if the X feature is implemented. The reason is that a client of
1458 the referenced profile would expect the conditional profile element to be present also in the case that the Y feature is
1459 implemented.

1460 5.14.2.4 Central and scoping class adaptation propagation

1461 The scoping class adaptation of a derived profile shall be based on the scoping class adaptation of its
1462 direct base profile. For the adapted class and for other base adaptations the provisions of 5.19.2 apply.

1463 The central class adaptation of a derived profile shall be based on the central class adaptation of its direct
1464 base profile. For the adapted class and for other base adaptations the provisions of 5.19.2 apply.

1465 The central class adaptation of a derived profile that is not a derived profile and is not a pattern profile
1466 shall be based on the scoping class adaptation of its direct referenced profile.

1467 The central class adaptation of a referenced pattern profile shall be the base of some adaptation of the
1468 derived profile.

1469 **5.14.2.5 Profile reference propagation**

1470 A referencing profile inherits all profile references (see 5.21) defined by its (direct or indirect) referenced
1471 profiles; this also applies to the names of the profile references.

1472 A derived profile may introduce new profile references.

1473 A derived profile may override a profile reference made in a referenced profile with a profile reference that
1474 references a profile derived from the profile referenced by the referenced profile. An overriding profile
1475 reference defined in a derived profile shall state the same profile reference name as that used by the
1476 profile reference defined in the referenced profile; in effect, the use of the same profile reference name
1477 establishes the override.

1478 **5.14.2.6 Registry reference propagation**

1479 A referencing profile inherits all registry references (see 5.22) defined by its (direct or indirect) referenced
1480 profiles; this also applies to the names of the registry references.

1481 A derived profile may introduce new registry references.

1482 A derived profile may override registry references made in referenced profiles with registry references that
1483 reference compatible registries. New minor or update versions of the originally referenced registry version
1484 are always compatible. New major versions of the originally referenced registry version and different
1485 registries are compatible to the originally referenced registry version if all registry elements required by
1486 the referenced profile(s) are compatibly defined in that registry version. An overriding registry reference
1487 defined in a derived profile shall state the same registry reference name as that used by the registry
1488 reference defined in the referenced profile; in effect, the use of the same registry reference name
1489 establishes the override.

1490 **5.14.2.7 Feature propagation**

1491 A referencing profile inherits all features (see 5.20) defined by its (direct or indirect) referenced profiles;
1492 this also applies to the names of the features.

1493 A derived profile may introduce new features.

1494 If the name of a feature defined by a derived profile is identical to the name of a feature defined in one of
1495 its referenced profiles, the feature defined by the referencing profile shall be a refinement of the feature
1496 defined in the referenced profile.

1497 A derived profile may refine features defined in referenced profiles. For a refined feature it is required that
1498 the set of referencing profile definitions conditional on the refined feature is a superset of the set of
1499 definitions conditional on the original feature, that is, the refined feature requires at least the definitions of
1500 the original feature, but may require more definitions.

1501 An overriding feature defined in a derived profile shall state the same name as that used by the feature
1502 defined in the base profile; in effect, the use of the same name establishes the override.

1503 **5.14.2.8 Class adaptation propagation**

1504 A referencing profile inherits all adaptations (see 5.19) defined by its (direct or indirect) referenced profiles
1505 according to the following two cases:

1506 **Case A:** The derived profile defines a new adaptation that is based on one or more adaptations
1507 defined in its referenced profiles. In this case, the rules for basing an adaptation on other adaptations
1508 as defined in 5.19.2 apply.

1509 For example, an Example Ethernet Port profile may define an EthernetPort adaptation of the
1510 CIM_EthernetPort class for the representation of Ethernet ports that is based on a NetworkPort
1511 adaptation of the CIM_NetworkPort class that is defined by a base Example Network Port profile.

1512 The name of the adaptation defined by the derived profile may differ from the name of the adaptation
1513 defined by the referenced profile.

1514 For each base adaptation with a derived adaptation of the same name, the derived adaptation
1515 redefines the base adaptation. The set of instances represented by both is constrained to be the
1516 same.

1517 For each base adaptation with a derived adaptation of a different name, the base adaptation is
1518 propagated without changes into the derived profile. The set of instances of the derived adaptation
1519 shall be a subset of the instances of the base adaptation.

1520 **Case B:** Adaptations defined by referenced profiles not referenced as a base adaptation of one of
1521 the adaptations defined by the derived profile are propagated without changes into the derived
1522 profile, including references to properties, methods, and operations. The adaptation name defined by
1523 the referenced profile becomes an adaptation name of the derived profile. If naming conflicts result
1524 from this rule, they shall be resolved by the derived profile through the application of case A. A not
1525 apparent source for naming conflicts is the case where a new release of a referenced profile defined
1526 an adaptation with a name in use by an already existing referencing profile.

1527 A referencing profile may define new adaptations in addition to those defined by its referenced profiles.

1528 **5.14.2.9 State description and use case propagation**

1529 A referencing profile inherits all state descriptions (see 5.23) and use cases (see 5.24) defined by its
1530 (direct or indirect) referenced profiles. A derived profile may introduce new state descriptions and use
1531 cases.

1532 A derived profile may refine and extend state descriptions and use cases defined in referenced profiles. A
1533 refinement replaces the use of some adaptations defined in referenced profiles with that of respective
1534 derived adaptations defined in the referencing profile.

1535 An extension of a use case adds additional steps. An extension of a state description adds additional
1536 adaptation instances.

1537 A refinement or extension of a state description or use case defined in a derived profile shall state the
1538 same name as that used by the state description or use case defined in the referenced profile; in effect,
1539 the use of the same name establishes the refinement or extension.

1540 **5.14.3 Profile derivation**

1541 **5.14.3.1 General**

1542 Subclause 5.14.2 defines rules that ensure that a client that exploits the management interface defined by
1543 a base profile can likewise interact through that management interface with profile implementations of any
1544 of its derived profiles.

1545 A derived profile should be based on exactly one *direct* base profile.

1546 New derived profiles written in conformance to this guide shall be based on exactly one direct base
 1547 profile. Minor revisions of existing profiles written in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide that define
 1548 more than base profile in the original profile may retain defining more than one direct base profile.

1549 In this guide, referring to more than one base profile means the direct base profile and possible indirect
 1550 base profiles. This is because profile derivation may be applied at more than one level, such that a base
 1551 profile likewise may be a derived profile. For example, a profile A may be based on a profile B, and profile
 1552 B may be based on profile C, and so forth. Consequently a derived profile — while having exactly one
 1553 *direct* base profile — can have additional *indirect* base profiles.

1554 A derived profile inherits definitions of all its (direct or indirect) base profiles, as follows:

- 1555 • management domain context
- 1556 • Schema references
- 1557 • features
- 1558 • profile references
- 1559 • registry references
- 1560 • adaptations (including their property requirements, method requirements, operation
 1561 requirements and metric requirements)
- 1562 • use cases

1563 Other definitions of base profiles are not inherited by a derived profile and need to be exclusively defined
 1564 by the derived profile; in some of these cases, definitions in 5.14.1 constrain the possible choices of a
 1565 derived profile.

1566 NOTE Special implementation requirements apply for derived profiles. For example, all implementation
 1567 requirements defined by a derived profile need to be merged with those of its base profiles; for details, see clause 6.

1568 DEPRECATED

1569 Version 1.0 of this guide defined the term *profile specialization*. This term was deprecated and replaced
 1570 by *profile derivation*, because profile specialization does not address the possible cases of expanding the
 1571 management domain addressed by and extending the management interface defined by the base profile.

1572 Version 1.0 of this guide allowed multiple inheritances, such that a derived profile could be directly based
 1573 on more than one profile. This is deprecated because it enables the definition of derived profiles while not
 1574 ensuring polymorphism; that is, it is not ensured that a client written against the definition of any base
 1575 profile could interact with the profile implementation of the derived profile. Furthermore, there are no rules
 1576 with respect to the merging of implementation requirements resulting from definitions of the base profiles
 1577 and the derived profiles, and there are no rules that prohibited a derived profile from being based on a set
 1578 of base profiles with contradicting requirements.

1579 DEPRECATED

1580 5.14.3.2 Definition of schema references

1581 A derived profile shall reference each schema that defines classes adapted by the profile; see 5.12 for a
 1582 definition of the elements of schema references.

1583 A derived profile may introduce new schema references.

1584 The version of a referenced schema in a derived profile shall not be less recent than the most recent
 1585 version of that schema in any base profile. A derived profile may refine a schema reference of a base
 1586 profile by requiring a more recent version of the referenced schema.

1587 5.14.4 Profile usage

1588 5.14.4.1 General

1589 When one profile references another, which is not a pattern profile, and the relationship is not derivation,
1590 the two profiles are joined via the central class adaptation (5.14.4.2) of the referencing profile and the
1591 scoping class adaptation (5.14.4.4) of the referenced profile.

1592 Scoping optimizes the conformance advertisement of component profile implementations by reducing the
1593 number of required CIM_ElementConformsToProfile association instances; for details, see 5.17 and
1594 [DSP1033](#).

1595 When referenced profile is a pattern profile and the relationship is not derivation, the referencing profile
1596 shall base one of its adaptations on the central class adaptation of the pattern profile. Scoping does not
1597 apply to pattern profiles.

1598 The scoping relationship is defined by the following elements:

- 1599 • The central class adaptation of the referenced profile (see 5.14.4.2) provides the focal point for
1600 identifying all other adaptation instances of the referenced profile.
- 1601 • A central class adaptation of the referencing profile (see 5.14.4.2) that is based (see 5.19.2) on
1602 the scoping class adaptation of the referenced profile (see 5.14.4.4) provides the primary
1603 intersection between adaptations of the referencing and reference profile.
- 1604 • The scoping path (see 5.14.4.5) defined by the referenced profile provides the algorithm to
1605 locate a instances of the referenced profile's central class adaptation from an instance of the
1606 referencing profile's central class adaptation, (which is also the referenced profile's scoping
1607 class adaptation.)

1608 For example, an Example Fan profile might define a FanSystem adaptation of the CIM_System class as
1609 its scoping class adaptation, and an Example Computer System profile might define its ComputerSystem
1610 adaptation of the CIM_ComputerSystem class as the central class adaptation, and base it on the
1611 FanSystem adaptation of the Example Fan profile. In this case the Example Computer System profile
1612 defines a scoping relationship to the Example Fan profile, because the central class adaptation of the
1613 referencing profile is based on the scoping class adaptation of the referenced profile.

1614 NOTE Not every profile reference implies a scoping relationship; a scoping relationship is only defined if the central
1615 class adaptation of the referencing profile is based on the scoping class adaptation of the referenced profile. For
1616 example, the Example Fan profile might reference an Example Sensors profile that defines a SensorSystem
1617 adaptation of the CIM_System class as its scoping class adaptation; in this case the Example Fan profile does not
1618 (and cannot for class compatibility reasons; see 5.19.2) define its central class adaptation based on the scoping class
1619 adaptation of the Example Sensors profile.

1620 5.14.4.2 Central class adaptation

1621 A profile shall designate exactly one mandatory class adaptation as the central class adaptation.

1622 For requirements relating to profile registration, see 5.17.

1623 The central class adaptation is the focal point of a subject profile. It should model the central managed
1624 object type in the management domain that is addressed by the subject profile.

1625 5.14.4.3 Non-central class adaptations

1626 An association path formed by association and ordinary class adaptations of the profile that enables
1627 traversal from an instance of the central class adaptation to an instance of a participating non-central
1628 class adaptation is sufficient to identify an instance of that non-central class as one that shall be
1629 conformant to the profile.

1630 For all other non-central class adaptations, the profile shall specify a means to identify conformant
1631 instances.

1632 **5.14.4.4 Scoping class adaptation**

1633 A pattern profile (see 5.13.4) shall not designate a scoping class adaptation.

1634 A component profile (see 5.13.3) shall designate exactly one mandatory class adaptation as the scoping
1635 class adaptation. In this case, the scoping class adaptation shall be different from the designated central
1636 class adaptation (see 5.14.4.2).

1637 An autonomous profile (see 5.13.2) shall either not designate a scoping class adaptation, or shall
1638 designate the same class adaptation as both the central class adaptation (see 5.14.4.2) and the scoping
1639 class adaptation. In either case, the scoping class adaptation of the autonomous profile shall be the same
1640 as its central class adaptation.

1641 For requirements relating to profile registration, see 5.17.

1642 The scoping class adaptation provides an external attach point for scoping profiles. A scoping profile may
1643 connect to that attach point by defining its central class adaptation based on the scoping class adaptation
1644 defined in referenced profiles.

1645 **5.14.4.5 Scoping path**

1646 A scoping path is an association traversal path defined by the subject profile connecting its central class
1647 adaptation with its scoping class adaptation.

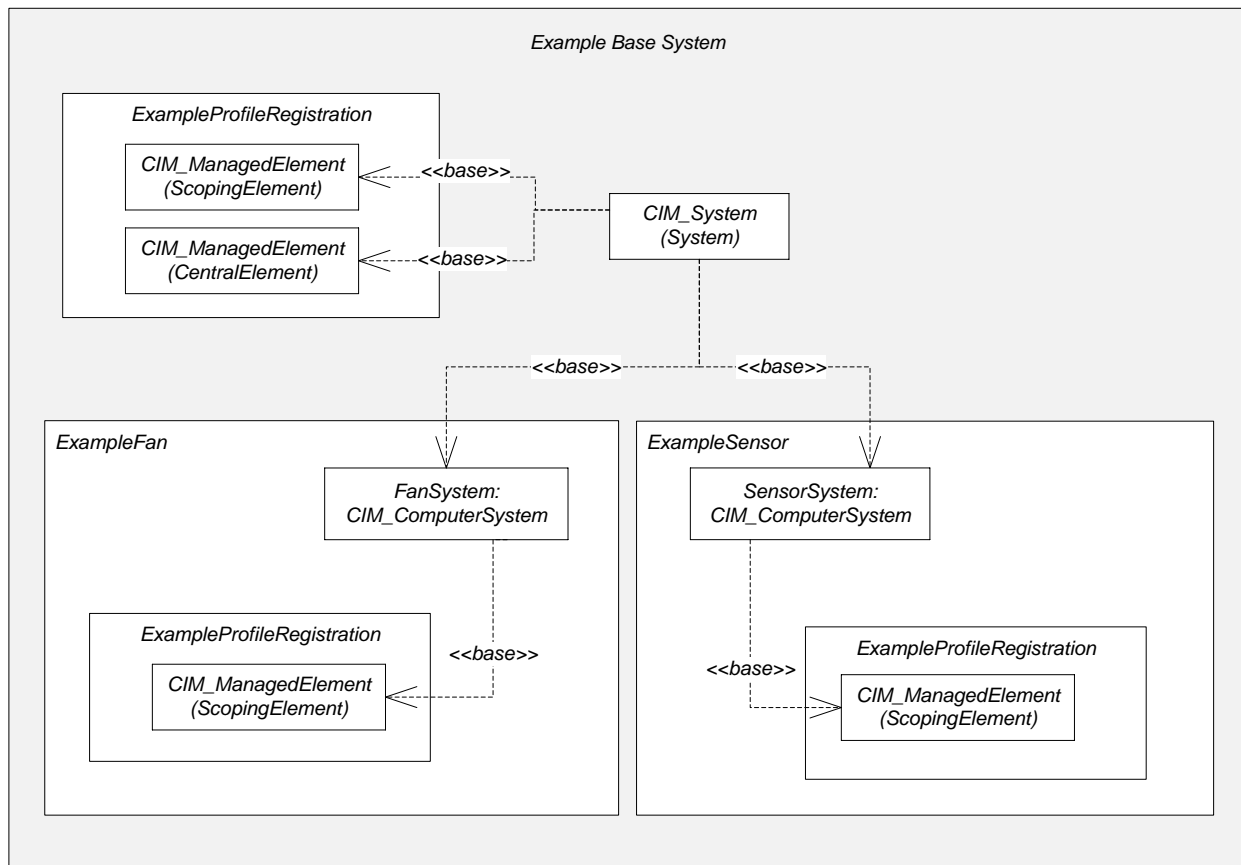
1648 Each component profile shall define a scoping path. The scoping path shall be specified by a set of
1649 adaptations of associations and ordinary classes that are defined by the subject profile. The scoping path
1650 shall enable bidirectional navigation between instances of the central class adaptation and instances of
1651 the scoping class adaptation.

1652 **5.14.4.6 Examples of scoping relationships**

- 1653 • Autonomous profile with optional component profiles

1654 Embedded control systems optionally include management interfaces for elements such as fans
1655 or power supplies. In this case, the primary management interface addressing the core
1656 functionality of the control systems would be defined in the autonomous profile, whereas the
1657 secondary management interfaces addressing the functionality of the fan and power supply
1658 elements would be defined in separate component profiles. This is shown in the Figure 4.

1659



1660

Figure 4 – Autonomous profile and optional component profiles

1661

- Multiple autonomous profiles sharing component profiles

1662

1663 Disk arrays and volume managers provide similar RAID virtualization capabilities from a device
 1664 of host-resident software. In this case, a RAID virtualization component profile could be
 1665 referenced (shared) by an Array (external virtualization hardware) autonomous profile, and by a
 1666 Volume Manager (host-resident virtualization software) autonomous profile.

- Referenced component profiles, scoped to the same autonomous profile

1667

1668 Many types of systems include batteries — sometimes batteries are configured in redundant
 1669 sets. This could be modeled as a Battery component profile with a separate, optional Battery
 1670 Redundancy component profile. Elements of component profiles are scoped to a System
 1671 instance defined in the context of an autonomous profile in the scoping hierarchy.

- Scoping between component profiles

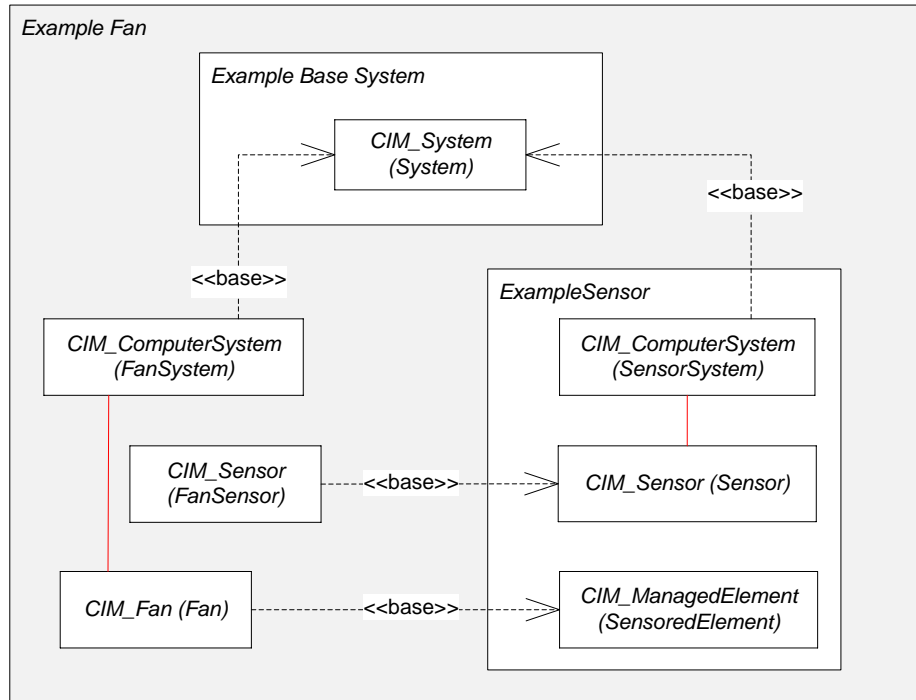
1672

1673 Figure 5 and Figure 6 show two variants of an Example Fan profile referencing an Example
 1674 Sensors profile:

- Figure 5 shows the example with a scoping relationship established by an autonomous Example System profile (see Figure 4) for both an Example Fan and an Example Sensors profile by basing the Example System profile's System adaptation on both the FanSystem adaptation of the Example Fan profile and the SensorSystem adaptation of the Example Sensors profile.

1675
 1676
 1677
 1678
 1679

- 1680 – Figure 6 shows a variant of this example with the scoping relationship for the Example
- 1681 Sensors profile established by the Example Fan profile; in this case the Example Fan
- 1682 profile bases its (central) Fan adaptation on the (scoping) SensoredElement adaptation of
- 1683 the Example Element Sensors profile, thereby establishing a scoping relationship. Note
- 1684 that the SensoredElement adaptation adapts the CIM_ManagedElement class. That way
- 1685 any profile adapting the CIM_ManagedElement class (or a subclass thereof) as its central
- 1686 class adaptation could define a scoping relationship to the Example Element Sensors
- 1687 profile.

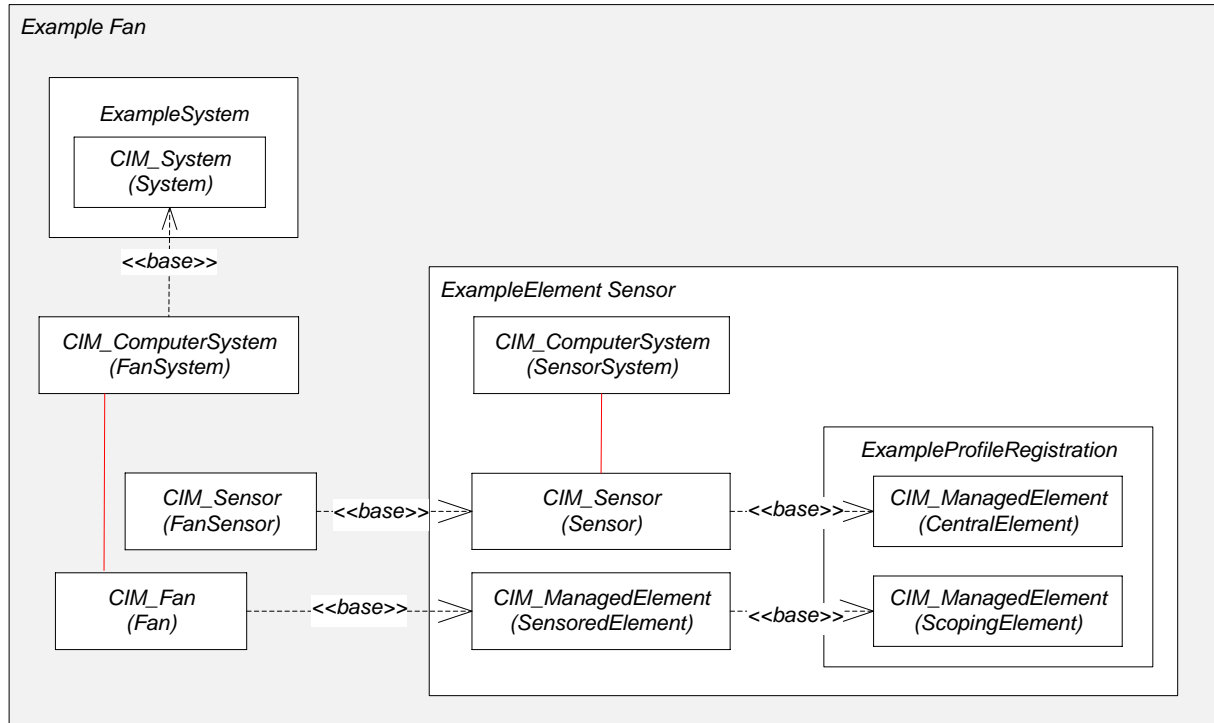


1688

1689

Figure 5 – Variant of a component profile using system scope

1690



1691

1692

Figure 6 – Variant of a component profile using element scope

1693 Note that the variant shown in Figure 6 would require the central class profile advertisement methodology
 1694 as defined in the *Profile Registration* profile (see [DSP1033](#)) to be implemented for the Example Fan
 1695 profile because version 1.0 of the *Profile Registration* profile does not allow the scoping class profile
 1696 advertisement methodology to span two or more levels of profiles.

1697 5.15 Abstract and concrete profiles

1698 5.15.1 Abstract profile

1699 An abstract profile is a special kind of profile specifying common elements and behavior as a base for
 1700 derived profiles.

- 1701 • An abstract profile is explicitly designated as abstract.
- 1702 • An abstract profile shall not be implemented directly; instead, the definitions and requirements
 1703 of an abstract profile are propagated into derived profiles (see 5.14.1) and apply for profile
 1704 implementations implementing concrete derived profiles.
- 1705 • An abstract profile may define class adaptations of concrete classes and/or abstract classes.
- 1706 • An abstract profile may define concrete class adaptations and/or abstract class adaptations.
- 1707 • An abstract profile may be a derived profile, and may be further derived.

1708 Abstract profiles serve two purposes:

- 1709 • Provide a base for derived profiles
- 1710 • Provide a point of reference for referencing profiles

1711 For example, an abstract profile could be defined for the management domain of basic computer system
 1712 management, and derived profiles could tailor that to various types of computer systems such as desktop
 1713 computer systems or virtual computer systems.

1714 Profiles may define a referenced profile relationship to an abstract profile. For example:

- 1715 • A profile addressing the management domain of virtual computer system could define a profile
 1716 reference to an abstract profile addressing the management domain of allocating resources to
 1717 consumers.
- 1718 • A concrete profile for a storage system may specify a profile derivation from an abstract profile
 1719 for computer systems.

1720 **5.15.2 Concrete profile**

1721 A concrete profile is any profile that is not an abstract profile.

- 1722 • Only concrete profiles may be directly implemented.
- 1723 • A concrete profile may be a derived profile, and a derived profile may be based on both
 1724 concrete profiles and/or abstract profiles.
- 1725 • Specific requirements for the definition of adaptations of abstract classes apply; see 5.19.3.
- 1726 • Furthermore, 5.17 defines requirements for concrete profiles related to profile registration.

1727 **5.16 Management domain**

1728 A profile should define the set of managed object types addressed by the profile. These definitions should
 1729 define the functionality of respective managed objects to the extent exposed through the management
 1730 interface defined by the profile. The purpose is to provide a profile implementer sufficient to realize the
 1731 profile defined mappings (see 5.6.1).

1732 In some cases it may be sufficient to refer to respective definitions in the schema definition of adapted
 1733 classes. However, generally profiles adapt generic classes to model a more specific managed object type
 1734 than that described in the schema definition of each adapted class.

1735 For example, in Table 1 a simple definition of a management domain by a profile defining a management
 1736 interface for the management of files and file systems is shown.

1737 **Table 1 – Example management domain definition**

| X-6 | Description |
|-----|---|
| | <p>This profile addresses file management. The major managed object types are files, directories, and file systems.</p> <p>A <i>file system</i> is a set of files that is collectively stored. A file system and its files are accessible by clients. Each file system contains one root directory.</p> <p>A <i>file</i> is a block of arbitrary information that is stored in a file system. Each file shall have an identifier that uniquely identifies the file in the scope of a file system. Files may be referenced by one or more directories; each such file reference defines a file name that shall be unique within the referencing directory.</p> <p>A <i>directory</i> is a special kind of file that contains a list of references to files; each list entry references one file. A directory shall assign a name to each referenced file that is unique in scope of the directory.</p> |

1738 In this example the management domain definition shown in Table 1 would enable a profile
 1739 implementation of the file management profile for the FAT file system to establish a mapping between
 1740 object types defined by the file management profile and respective elements defined by the specification
 1741 of the FAT file system.

1742 5.17 Profile registration

1743 The CIM schema defines classes that enable the representation of implemented profile versions and their
1744 relationships, such as the CIM_RegisteredProfile class and the CIM_ElementConformsToProfile and
1745 CIM_ReferencedProfile associations. The *Profile Registration* profile (see [DSP1033](#)) defines a model for
1746 the representation of implemented profile versions and their relationships by defining the use of these
1747 classes; see DSP1033 for details.

1748 Concrete profiles except the *Profile Registration* profile (see [DSP1033](#)) shall reference the *Profile*
1749 *Registration* profile (see [DSP1033](#)) as a mandatory profile.

1750 Pattern profiles shall not include a profile reference to [DSP1033](#).

1751 A profile reference to [DSP1033](#) implies that the central class adaptation (see 5.14.4.2) shall additionally
1752 conform to the requirements for central classes defined by the *Profile Registration* profile (see [DSP1033](#)),
1753 and that the scoping class adaptation (see 5.14.4.4) shall additionally conform to the requirements for
1754 scoping classes defined by the *Profile Registration* profile (see [DSP1033](#)), and that the adaptation of the
1755 CIM_RegisteredProfile class modeling the profile registration of the subject profile conforms with the
1756 requirements of the CIM_RegisteredProfile "profile class" defined by the *Profile Registration* profile (see
1757 [DSP1033](#)).

1758 NOTE 1 The requirements for central classes and scoping classes defined by the *Profile Registration* profile (see
1759 [DSP1033](#)) imply the implementation of a profile advertisement methodology.

1760 NOTE 2 It is expected that a future version of the *Profile Registration* profile (see [DSP1033](#)) is defined based on
1761 version 1.1 (or later) of this guide, and defines adaptations such as a CentralElement, a ScopingElement and a
1762 ProfileRegistration adaptation that could serve as base adaptations for the central class adaptation, the scoping class
1763 adaptation and the profile registration adaptation of referencing profiles. This will allow defining the requirements
1764 related to profile registration and to central class adaptations and scoping class adaptations more precisely.

1765 Abstract profiles may reference [DSP1033](#) as a mandatory profile; if so, the requirements of [DSP1033](#)
1766 apply for the (implicit) profile implementation of the abstract profile as part of a concrete profile derived
1767 from the abstract profile, as well as for the profile implementation of the concrete profile itself because
1768 that is also required to reference [DSP1033](#) as a mandatory profile.

1769 NOTE 1 This enables clients to be written against an abstract profile without requiring knowledge about the
1770 implemented concrete profile derived from the abstract profile.

1771 NOTE 2 Version 1.0 of this guide was unclear about whether or not abstract profiles were allowed to refer to
1772 [DSP1033](#).

1773 In any case, the requirements of 5.14.4.2, 5.14.4.4, and 5.14.4.5 apply.

1774 5.18 Profile element names

1775 A named profile element shall be assigned a name that uniquely identifies the named profile element
1776 within the scope of the profile defining the named profile element. Uniqueness is only required separately
1777 for each kind of named profile element; consequently for example, it is possible that within one profile a
1778 feature has the same name as an adaptation.

1779 The name shall conform to the format defined for the ABNF rule IDENTIFIER in ANNEX A of [DSP0004](#).

1780 The name should be composed of a concatenated sequence of words, with each word starting with a
1781 capital letter.

1782 NOTE This notation is occasionally termed camel-case notation (starting with a capital letter).

1783 Profile element names are part of the normative definitions of a profile; the rules for backward
1784 compatibility and deprecation as defined in 6.6 and 6.8 apply.

1785 For example, StateManagement might name a feature that defines a model for the management of the
 1786 state of managed objects. If version 1.0 had introduced that feature, subsequent minor versions would be
 1787 required to retain the StateManagement feature under that name, and with identical or compatibly
 1788 extended semantics. Subsequent minor versions could deprecate the feature, but only a new major
 1789 version would be allowed to remove the feature.

1790 Examples of adaptation names are Fan for an adaptation of the CIM_Fan class, or FanOfSystem for an
 1791 adaptation of the CIM_SystemDevice association modeling the relationship between systems and fans.

1792 Examples of profile reference names are DiskSpeedSensors and DiskTemperatorSensors for *two* profile
 1793 references defined by an Example Disk profile referencing an Example Sensors profile for the two
 1794 purposes: The modeling of disk speed sensors and disk temperature sensors.

1795 5.19 Class adaptations

1796 5.19.1 General

1797 A class adaptation is a named profile element and may be referred to simply as *adaptations*.

1798 An adaptation defines the use of a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose.

1799 In addition to *adapting* a schema-defined class, an adaptation may further be *based on* one or more other
 1800 adaptations. The subject profile may establish further constraints for an adaptation beyond those
 1801 established by the schema definition of the adapted class, or by referenced adaptations.

1802 This guide defines the following requirement elements for the use in class adaptations:

- 1803 • property requirements (see 5.19.10)
- 1804 • method requirements (see 5.19.11)
- 1805 • operation requirements (see 5.19.12)
- 1806 • input value requirements (see 5.19.15.6)
- 1807 • error reporting requirements (see 5.19.12.6)

1808 In many cases the requirements defined in a profile for a profile element are based on, refer to, extend, or
 1809 further constrain an entity that is defined outside of the profile. For example, an adaptation defined in a
 1810 profile adapts a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose; or a registry reference refers to a
 1811 registry of certain things such as messages or metrics, which are applied or used other definitions within
 1812 the profile.

1813

1814 DEPRECATED

1815 Profiles that were created in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide did not define adaptations, but
 1816 so-called "*profile classes*" (sometimes also called "profiled class", "supported class" or just "class"). The
 1817 concept of "profile classes" obliterated the distinction between the schema definition of a class, and the
 1818 profile defined use of the class. The semantics of "profile classes" can viewed as a subset of the
 1819 semantics of adaptations; for example, "profile classes" lack the ability to be based on each other. A
 1820 "profile class" used the name of the adapted schema class; that name could be suffixed with an optional
 1821 modifier in order to resolve name clashes.

1822 Minor revisions of profiles specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue using the
 1823 following naming convention for adaptations (stated in ABNF):

1824 `ProfileClassName = SchemaClassName ["(" Modifier ")"]`

1825 SchemaClassName is the name of the class defined in the schema. Modifier is a short descriptor that
 1826 describes the use of the adapted class in the context of the profile. The modifier should be composed of
 1827 fewer than 30 characters.

1828 Examples:

1829 `CIM_ComputerSystem`

1830 `CIM_ComputerSystem (Switch)`

1831 `CIM_StoragePool (Primordial pool)`

1832 This naming convention shall only be applied for existing definitions of "profile classes" in minor revisions
 1833 of existing profiles. Newly introduced adaptations in minor revisions shall not apply this naming
 1834 convention.

1835 **DEPRECATED**

1836 5.19.2 Adapted class and base adaptations

1837 An adaptation adapts a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose; this class is called the adapted
 1838 class.

1839 In addition, an adaptation may take on the requirements of zero or more other adaptations, which are
 1840 called base adaptations.

1841 For a particular adaptation, the following rules apply:

- 1842 • **Rule I:** One adapted class.

1843 An adaptation shall identify exactly one class defined in a schema as the adapted class.

- 1844 • **Rule II:** Zero or more base adaptations.

1845 An adaptation may reference one or more adaptations defined in the same or in referenced
 1846 profiles as base adaptations.

- 1847 • **Rule III:** Compatibility of the adapted class with that of base adaptations.

1848 If a class adaptation A adapts a class C and is based on one or more other adaptations A₁
 1849 adapting C₁, A₂ adapting C₂, ..., A_n adapting C_n, then C shall be the same or a subclass of any
 1850 C_i, i=1...n.

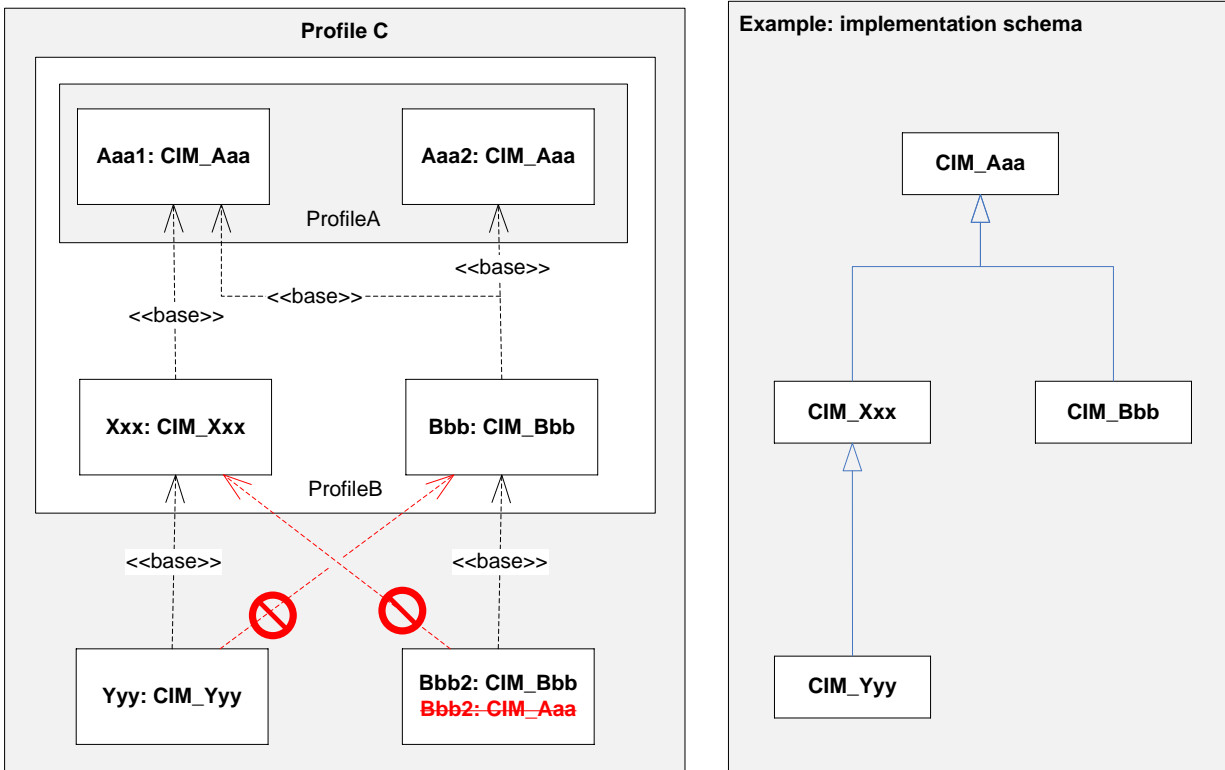
1851 **NOTE** The last requirement ensures that a profile implementation of the subject profile can implement class C
 1852 without verifying whether a base adaptation requires the implementation of a subclass of C. This enables the
 1853 supplementary addition of the profile implementation of a new component profile to a previously existing
 1854 implementation of a set of profiles, where the new component profile is not referenced.

- 1855 • **Rule IV:** Compatibility of the adapted class requirements with those of base adaptations.

1856 A class adaptation A adapts a class C and specifies requirements for class elements
 1857 (properties, methods, operations...) X₁ X₂, ..., X_n, and is based on one or more other
 1858 adaptations A₁, A₂, ..., A_n, then for each i from 1 to n, the requirements specified for X_i shall not
 1859 be less restrictive than the corresponding X_i specified either by the class C or by any of the
 1860 adaptations A₁, A₂, ..., A_n

1861 A class adaptation, its adapted class, its set of base adaptations, and their adapted classes form a
 1862 directed acyclic graph (DAG). This graph is called the span of the class adaptation.

1863 Figure 7 shows an example that illustrates how the rules defined in this subclause establish limitations for
 1864 the selection of base adaptations or of adaptable classes, after an initial choice is made.



1865

1866

Figure 7 – Example: class adaptation references and resultant schema

1867

In the example shown in Figure 7, the crossed relationships would violate Rule II, as follows:

1868

- Adaptation Yyy must not be based on adaptation Bbb because Yyy adapts CIM_Yyy, but Bbb adapts CIM_Bbb that is not CIM_Yyy or a superclass of CIM_Yyy; likewise, adaptation Bbb2 must not be based on adaptation Xxx.

1869

1870

1871

- Adaptation Bbb2 must not adapt CIM_Aaa, because Bbb2 is based on Bbb, and Bbb adapts CIM_Bbb that is a subclass of CIM_Aaa.

1872

1873

Profiles shall not adapt classes that are marked as deprecated in their schema definition, except in the case where a revision of an existing profile retains an adaptation of a class that was marked as deprecated in a later version of the schema.

1874

1875

1876

If an adaptation is based on one or more base adaptations, all of the following rules apply for that adaptation:

1877

1878

- All definitions and requirements defined by base adaptations are propagated into the adaptation.

1879

1880

- The potential set of instances of an adaptation shall be a subset of the potential set of instances of each of its base adaptations. For example, if the VirtualSystem adaptation defined by an Example Virtual System profile is based on the ComputerSystem adaptation of an Example Computer System profile, the potential set of instances of the VirtualSystem adaptation is required to be a subset of the potential set of instances of the ComputerSystem adaptation.

1881

1882

1883

1884

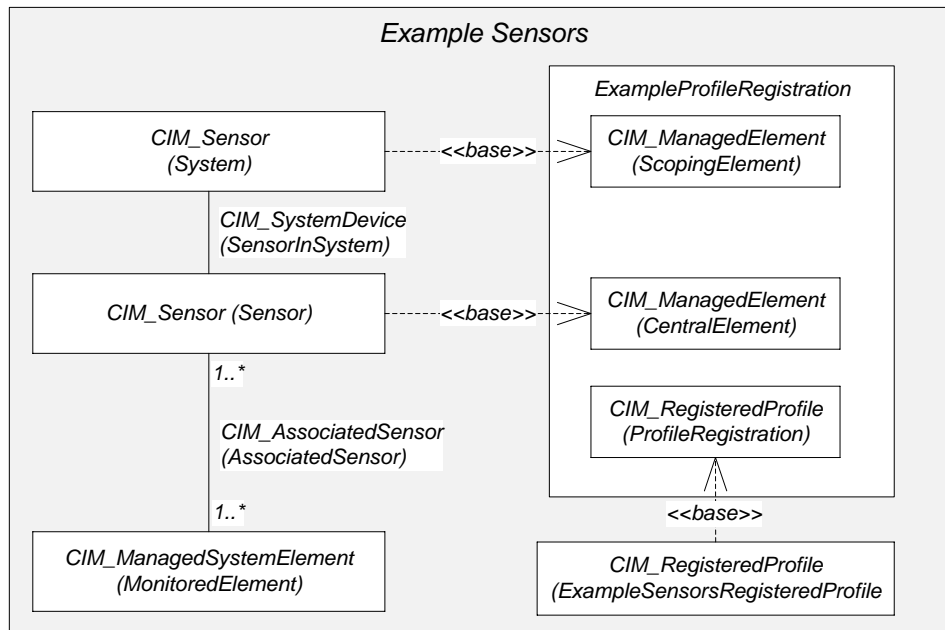
1885

1886

The implementation requirements of the referenced profile apply to all of its remaining adaptation instances that do not belong to the set of instances belonging to adaptations of the referencing profile.

1887

1888 DMTF/UML composite structure diagrams (see 6.9.2.2) are specifically tailored to graphically depict the
 1889 dependencies introduced by basing adaptations on other adaptations.



1890

1891

Figure 8 – Example Sensors profile

1892 Figure 8 shows the UML composite structure diagram of an Example Sensors profile; for details about
 1893 UML composite structure diagrams, see 6.9.2.2.

1894 In Figure 8, the rectangle labeled "ExampleProfileRegistration" represents the Example Sensors profile's
 1895 reference to an Example Profile Registration profile. The solid rectangle labeled "CIM_Sensor" represents
 1896 the Example Sensors profile's Sensor adaptation of the CIM_Sensor class. The dashed line labeled
 1897 "<<base>>" between the CIM_Sensor adaptation and the CentralElement adaptation indicates that the
 1898 Sensor adaptation of the Example Sensors profile is based on the CentralElement adaptation of the
 1899 Example Profile Registration profile. Likewise, the System adaptation of the Example Sensors profile is
 1900 based on the ScopingElement adaptation of the Example Profile Registration profile, and the
 1901 ExampleSensorsRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Sensors profile is based on the
 1902 RegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Profile Registration profile.

1903 The capability of basing adaptations on other adaptations enables encapsulation, resulting in simplified
 1904 modeling approaches. For example, in an adaptation of the CIM_ElementConformsToProfile association
 1905 is not shown. Instead, it is assumed that a respective association adaptation is defined by the Example
 1906 Profile Registration profile. That way, the different approaches to modeling the functionality related to
 1907 profile registration is exclusively defined in the Example Profile Registration profile, and there is no need
 1908 to refine that adaptation in the Example Sensors profile.

1909 Furthermore, the capability of basing adaptations defined in one profile on adaptations defined in
 1910 referenced profiles provides for a much finer granularity of profile dependencies: With this approach
 1911 requirements are introduced at the level of adaptations rather than at the level of profiles. For example,
 1912 the approach of basing the central and scoping adaptations on respective adaptations of the Example
 1913 Profile Registration Profile as shown in Figure 8 is much more specific than that of only referencing the
 1914 Example Profile Registration Profile as a mandatory profile.

1915 **5.19.3 Abstract class adaptation**

1916 Abstract class adaptations are class adaptations with an implementation type of "abstract". Any class that
1917 is not an abstract class adaptation is termed a concrete class adaptation.

1918 One purpose of abstract class adaptations is to serve as a common endpoint for generic association
1919 adaptations, such that the relationship applies to any class adaptation based on the abstract class
1920 adaptation and the definition of specific association adaptations for every possible endpoint can be
1921 avoided.

1922 Another purpose of abstract class adaptations is grouping the common requirements of other class
1923 adaptations. Instead of repeating the common requirements in each specific class adaptation the
1924 common requirements are specified in an abstract class adaptation, and each specific class adaptation is
1925 based on that abstract class adaptation.

1926 Abstract class adaptations are not directly implemented; instead, their requirements are propagated into
1927 class adaptations that are based on them. For details, see clause 6.

1928 Each class adaptation adapting an abstract class from a schema shall be designated as an abstract class
1929 adaptation, with one exception:

1930 A profile may define a concrete (non-abstract) adaptation of an abstract class, if in addition it states a
1931 concrete class derived from the adapted class that shall be implemented if the profile implementation
1932 does not need a more specific derived class. For example, a profile may define an XxxComponent
1933 adaptation of the (abstract) CIM_Component class and state that the CIM_ConcreteComponent
1934 class shall be implemented if the implementation does not require a more specific association
1935 derived from CIM_Component. This specification approach enables implementations to define their
1936 own implementation classes derived directly from the abstract CIM_Component association (instead
1937 of being forced to base their implementation class on the concrete CIM_ConcreteComponent
1938 association).

1939 **5.19.4 Trivial class adaptation**

1940 A trivial class adaptation does not define additional requirements beyond those defined by its adapted
1941 class and its base adaptations. Trivial class adaptations typically are defined as a point of reference for
1942 other profiles, such that referencing profiles can define adaptations based on them. Another typical use of
1943 a trivial class adaptation is introducing a concrete equivalent of an abstract class adaptation in the case
1944 where no additional requirements need to be defined beyond those defined by the abstract class
1945 adaptation.

1946 **5.19.5 Management domain context of class adaptations**

1947 For each adaptation it defines, the subject profile shall state the managed object type from the
1948 management domain (or the aspect of a managed object type) that is modeled by the adaptation. See
1949 5.16 for requirements on defining the management domain and its managed object types.

1950 NOTE Elements from the CIM infrastructure can also be described by managed object types, such as, for example,
1951 registered profiles or indication filters. While without CIM these elements would not exist as managed objects in a
1952 managed environment (unlike, for example, computer systems or file systems), they are part of the managed
1953 environment if CIM is applied for defining and realizing the management infrastructure, and are modeled by
1954 adaptations of CIM classes. For example, an Example Profile Registration profile might model a RegisteredProfile
1955 adaptation of the CIM_RegisteredProfile class modeling the managed object type "registered profile", or an Example
1956 Indications profile might model an IndicationFilter adaptation of the CIM_IndicationFilter class modeling the managed
1957 object type "indication filter".

1958 For adaptations of association classes, the management domain context may be specified in the form of
1959 a relationship, such as, for example, containment.

1960 For adaptations of indication classes, the management domain context may be specified by stating the
1961 event that is reported by instances of the adapted indication class.

1962 5.19.6 Requirement level

1963 For each adaptation it defines, the subject profile shall designate a requirement level (5.8) that
1964 determines the requirement for implementing the adaptation as part of the profile implementation of the
1965 subject profile.

1966 5.19.7 Individual requirement levels of base adaptations

1967 If an adaptation is based on other adaptations (see 5.19.2), each such relationship shall be designated
1968 with a separate requirement level that determines the requirement for implementing the base adaptation
1969 as part of implementing the subject adaptation.

1970 NOTE The typical requirement level for a base adaptation is mandatory. In some cases a requirement level of
1971 conditional/conditional exclusive for a feature is a favorable alternative. As an example, consider the case in which
1972 the subject profile defines an optional Metrics feature. In this case, some adaptations of the subject profile would
1973 typically be based on adaptations defined in the Base Metrics profile, but only if the optional Metrics feature of the
1974 subject profile is implemented.

1975 5.19.8 Implementation type

1976 Each adaptation shall be designated with an implementation type that details how the adaptation is to be
1977 implemented.

1978 The following implementation types are possible:

1979 **instantiated:** indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the
1980 adaptation are instantiated on their own, i.e., they can be referenced with an instance path by a
1981 client. An adaptation that is based on a class that is qualified as a STRUCTURE shall not be
1982 specified as instantiated.

1983 **embedded:** indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the adaptation
1984 are embedded into an embedding element; they cannot directly be referenced with an instance path
1985 by a client.

1986 **abstract:** indicates that the implementation type of the adaptation is defined by its derived
1987 adaptations. Profiles shall assign the abstract implementation type if the functionality defined by the
1988 adaptation is not independently required for a functioning profile implementation, but instead is
1989 designed to be refined by other adaptations (defined in the same, or in other profiles) that define the
1990 abstract class adaptation as a base adaptation (for details, see 5.19.2). Insofar, the use of the
1991 abstract implementation type delegates the selection of an implementation type to adaptations based
1992 on the abstract class adaptation.

1993 **indication:** indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the adaptation
1994 are embedded as elements in indication delivery operations. The "indication" implementation type is
1995 only applicable for adaptations of classes that have effective qualifier values of Indication=True and
1996 Exception=False.

1997 **exception:** indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the adaptation
1998 are embedded into operation exceptions (typically delivered as fault responses of operations). The
1999 "exception" implementation type is only applicable for adaptations of classes that have effective
2000 qualifier values of Indication=True and Exception=True.

2001 DEPRECATED

2002 Profiles that were created in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide did not designate adaptations with
 2003 an implementation type. Minor revisions of profiles specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide
 2004 may continue to not designate an implementation type to the adaptations they define. In this case, a
 2005 default implementation type shall be assumed, as follows:

- 2006 • For adaptations of classes that have effective qualifier values of Indication=True and
 2007 Exception=False, the default implementation type is "indication".
- 2008 • For adaptations of classes that have effective qualifier values of Indication=True and
 2009 Exception=True, the default implementation type is "exception".
- 2010 • For all other adaptations, the default implementation type is "instantiated".

2011 DEPRECATED

2012 5.19.9 Designation of base adaptation candidates

2013 A profile may designate individual adaptations as base adaptation candidates. The purpose of this
 2014 designation is conveying to authors of referencing profiles that — from the perspective of the defining
 2015 profile — the designated adaptation models a functional element with the intention to be refined by means
 2016 of defining derived adaptations in referencing profiles.

2017 NOTE Formally, any adaptation defined in a profile can be used as a base adaptation; however, the specific
 2018 designation of an adaptation as a base adaptation candidate is intended to serve as a hint to authors of referencing
 2019 profiles for considering the definition of a derived adaptation.

2020 5.19.10 Metric requirements

2021 Profiles may define metric requirements. Metric requirements shall be stated as part of class adaptations.
 2022 The metric requirements shall be based on referenced metric definitions that are defined in metric
 2023 registries. Besides formal requirements for the specification of metric definitions, [DSP8020](#) also defines
 2024 requirements for the implementation of metrics. These implementation requirements apply for profile
 2025 implementations if a profile defines metric requirements by referencing metric definitions in metric
 2026 registries that are compliant with [DSP8020](#).

2027 If necessary, as part of their metric requirements within adaptations profiles may amend the referenced
 2028 metric definitions from metric registries. For example, such amendments may be necessary in order to
 2029 refine the metric semantics and establish the context with the incorporating adaptation. In particular, this
 2030 is required in the context of more generically defined metrics in metric registries. On the other hand,
 2031 specific metric definitions in metric registries in many cases already define all necessary implementation
 2032 requirements, such that referencing the registry-based definition along with the implementation
 2033 requirements imposed by [DSP8020](#) are sufficient for the purposes of the subject profile.

2034 Profiles shall apply one of the following approaches for the definition of metric requirements:

- 2035 • Managed object only (requires [DSP1053](#), with either direct or indirect reference)
- 2036 • With this approach, the metric requirements are defined as part of an adaptation that models
 2037 the managed object type for which the metric applies, by
 - 2038 – Basing that adaptation on the MonitoredElement adaptation defined in the *Base Metrics*
 2039 profile (see [DSP1053](#)), and
 - 2040 – Referencing in the same adaptation one or more metrics defined in a metric registry.
- 2041 • This is the most compact approach because most of the metric-related implementation
 2042 requirements are implied from [DSP1053](#). Specifically, the MonitoredElement adaptation from

- 2043 the *Base Metrics* profile implies implementation requirements for other adaptations defined in
 2044 the *Base Metrics* profile, such as the BaseMetricDefinition adaptation, the BaseMetricValue
 2045 adaptation, and their relationships. The adaptations from the *Base Metrics* profile also define
 2046 how requirements from the metric definition in the metric registry apply in their context.
- 2047 • Managed object and metric definition (requires [DSP1053](#), with either direct or indirect
 2048 reference)
 - 2049 • With this approach, the metric requirements are defined as part of a metric adaptation (an
 2050 adaptation of the CIM_BaseMetricDefinition class or a subclass of that) by
 - 2051 – Basing that adaptation on the BaseMetricDefinition adaptation or on the
 2052 AggregationMetricDefinition adaptation defined in the *Base Metrics* profile (see [DSP1053](#)),
 - 2053 – Referencing in the same adaptation one or more metric definitions defined in a metric
 2054 registry (see [DSP8020](#) for requirements on the specification of metric registries and their
 2055 use), and
 - 2056 – Defining one or more adaptations based on the MonitoredElement adaptation defined in
 2057 the *Base Metrics* profile modeling the entities for which the metrics apply, along with
 2058 related association adaptations based on the MetricDefForME adaptation defined in the
 2059 *Base Metric* profile that relate the managed elements with their metric definitions.
 - 2060 • This is a less compact, but more flexible, approach. In addition to its own requirements, the
 2061 BaseMetricDefinition adaptation from the *Base Metrics* profile implies additional
 2062 implementation requirements for related adaptations defined in the *Base Metrics* profile, such
 2063 as the BaseMetricValue adaptation and its relationships. However, with this approach the
 2064 subject profile is required to establish the context to one or more managed elements through
 2065 its adaptations based of the MetricDefForME adaptation. Again, the adaptations from the *Base
 2066 Metrics* profile also define how requirements from the metric definition in the metric registry
 2067 apply in their context.
 - 2068 • Complete approach ([DSP1053](#) not required, but possible)
 - 2069 • With this approach, the subject profile defines all aspects of the metric requirements through
 2070 one or more adaptations, and with or without referencing other profiles. At least one the metric
 2071 related adaptations is required to be based on a metric definition in a metric registry, and
 2072 establish the usage context of that registry-based metric definition for the modeled managed
 2073 object types.
- 2074 This is the most flexible approach. It does not require referencing [DSP1053](#), but requires the
 2075 most extensive definitions in the subject profile. The subject profile may or may not define its
 2076 metric-related adaptations based on adaptations defined in [DSP1053](#) or in other profiles. If so,
 2077 then the requirements of the base adaptations are imposed as usual. If not, then the subject
 2078 profile itself must define all metric-related requirements such as interpretation rules or value
 2079 constraints of certain metric-related properties, or as relationships between metric-related
 2080 adaptations.

2081 **5.19.11 Method requirements**

2082 **5.19.11.1 General**

2083 For each class adaptation of ordinary classes or associations it defines, a profile may define method
 2084 requirements for methods that are exposed by the adapted class.

2085 Each method requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the requirement
 2086 for implementing the method.

2087 For the definition of requirements for parameters and method return values the requirements of 5.19.11.4
2088 apply.

2089 Profiles shall not define method requirements for methods that are marked as deprecated in the schema
2090 definition of the adapted class, except within revisions of existing profiles that retain a method
2091 requirement for a method that was marked as deprecated in a subsequent version of the schema after
2092 the original version of the profile was released.

2093 Note that the Required qualifier for methods means that the method return values must not be Null; this
2094 does not imply a requirement to implement the method.

2095 As part of a method requirement, a profile shall state requirements for all method parameters, each time
2096 repeating (from the schema definition of the adapted class) the effective values of the In and Out
2097 qualifiers and — if present — that of the Required qualifier.

2098 NOTE This requirement aims at relieving profile consumers from analyzing the schema for respective
2099 requirements.

2100 In addition, for each input parameter, input value requirements may be specified; for details, see 5.19.16.

2101 Profiles should not replicate requirements from the schema or from base profiles unless needed for
2102 establishing additional requirements of the subject profile.

2103 **5.19.11.2 Requirements for the specification of constraints on methods and their parameters**

2104 The base set of permissible parameter and method return values is defined in the schema definition of
2105 the adapted class and/or its superclasses; as a matter of principle, schema definitions cannot be
2106 extended by profiles.

2107 A profile may specify constraints and requirements for methods and their parameters (including method
2108 return values) as part of the method requirements.

2109 Any such constraints and requirements shall apply in addition to, but shall not contradict, any constraints
2110 and requirements defined in the adapted class, its superclasses, and in base adaptations.

2111 Different rules are established for the definition of such constraints for output parameters and method
2112 return values, as opposed to those for input parameters:

- 2113 • For output parameters and method return values, profiles shall not specify method
2114 requirements that extend the set of permissible values as constrained in base adaptations, but
2115 may specify method requirements that further constrain that set. This rule ensures that the
2116 value set cannot be extended, and a client of a base adaptation never receives output values
2117 outside of the constraints established by base adaptations, even if an adaptation based on the
2118 base adaptation is actually implemented.

- 2119 • For input parameters, profiles shall not specify method requirements that further constrain the
2120 set of permissible input values as constrained in base adaptations, but may specify method
2121 requirements that extend that set. This rule ensures that the permissible input value set cannot
2122 be reduced, and conforming input values supplied by a client of a base adaptation are always
2123 to be accepted by the profile implementation, even if actually a derived adaptation is
2124 implemented.

2125 However, note that this rule does not prohibit constraining the base set of permissible input
2126 values defined by the *schema definition* of the adapted class and/or its superclasses. In other
2127 words, a profile may specify method requirements constraining the base set of permissible input
2128 values for a property as established by the schema definition of the adapted class and/or its
2129 superclasses, such that only a smaller set of values is required to be accepted by a profile
2130 implementation. This applies likewise for property values of adaptation instances that are
2131 required as input value. Particularly, in adaptations modeling acceptable input parameter

2132 values, a profile may reduce the set of properties and their supported value ranges with respect
2133 to those defined by the adapted class and/or its superclasses, such that only the properties and
2134 value ranges established by the profile are required to be accepted by a profile implementation.

2135 Profiles may specify the semantics of specific values of method input parameters (including
2136 values of properties in input instances) within the constraints already defined by the schema
2137 definition and base profiles. For example, for a method defined for the purpose of modifying an
2138 adaptation instance with an instance input parameter (that may or may not be an embedded
2139 instance), a profile may define that the value Null for properties in the input instance means not
2140 to change the value in the target instance.

2141 NOTE This redefinition of the meaning of specific values is not generally possible for instance
2142 modification operations (see 5.19.12.4), because their semantics are established by the defining
2143 operations specification and usually require that all values from the input instance are to be carried over as
2144 given into the target instance. For that reason it might occasionally be advantageous to define methods
2145 with similar semantics as the creation and modification operations, but with more flexibility with respect to
2146 interpreting client provided input values, including the case to interpret values of certain input parameters
2147 as patterns or as suggestions, but not as strict value requirements.

2148 In any case the schema definition of the adapted class, its superclasses, or any base adaptation may
2149 specify rules that establish limitations for the definition of such constraints in general, or under certain
2150 conditions.

2151 NOTE These rules enforce polymorphic behavior of methods with respect to the method requirements defined in
2152 profiles. However, they do not enforce polymorphic behavior of methods with respect to the base set of permissible
2153 parameter value defined by the schema. This approach addresses the situation that schema definitions frequently
2154 define large value sets for input parameters with the intention that implementations constrain that value set to those
2155 values supportable by the implementation. Likewise, in the case where the input parameter is defined to be an
2156 (embedded) instance, that needs to be constrainable to instances of subclasses, to instances only containing values
2157 for a subset of the defined properties, and/or to instances where for specific properties the value set is constrained.

2158 5.19.11.3 Management domain context of methods

2159 As part of every method requirement, a profile shall specify the method semantics with respect to the
2160 managed environment, unless these are already precisely defined by a base adaptation or by the schema
2161 definition of an adapted class. The description may adopt text from the schema description of the method,
2162 but the text shall be rephrased as standard English text.

2163 In the schema, method semantics are typically only described with respect to the CIM model. The
2164 semantics described in the profile shall not contradict those defined in the schema. In addition — because
2165 profiles need to describe the relationship between the CIM model and the managed environment
2166 represented by that CIM model — in profiles it is generally not sufficient to describe only the expected
2167 state of the CIM model after the method execution is completed. Instead, profiles should detail the
2168 required changes on managed objects in the managed environment that cause corresponding changes in
2169 the CIM instances that represent the managed objects.

2170 For example, if an Example Fan profile requires that a fan is active as an effect of executing the
2171 RequestStateChange() method on the instance of the Fan adaptation representing the fan if the value of
2172 the RequestedState parameter is 2 (Enabled), that profile shall explicitly state as part of the required
2173 method semantics that the represented fan shall be activated, and not just that the value of the
2174 EnabledState property in the representing Fan instance shall be 2 (Enabled). The purpose of this
2175 requirement is to precisely instruct the implementer about the desired behavior in the managed
2176 environment, and not just about expected changes in the model representation of the managed
2177 environment. Of course, in addition the property requirements for the EnabledState property of the Fan
2178 adaptation need to separately state that the value shall be 2 (Enabled) if and only if the fan is active. For
2179 further rationale, see 5.6.3.

2180 5.19.11.4 Specification of the reporting of method errors

2181 The rules for the specification of reporting of operation errors defined in 5.19.12.6 shall be applied.

2182 5.19.12 Operation requirements

2183 5.19.12.1 General

2184 For each adaptation it defines, a profile shall define operation requirements. The operation requirements
2185 shall be stated with respect to the operations defined in [DSP0223](#).

2186 Each operation requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the requirement
2187 for implementing the operation.

2188 Profiles shall not define operation requirements for the operation(s) defined by the operations
2189 specification that request the execution of methods (such as the InvokeMethod() operation defined in
2190 [DSP0223](#)); instead, such operations are implicitly required if the profile defines any method requirements
2191 (see 5.19.11).

2192 5.19.12.2 Operations specification

2193 Profiles shall select [DSP0223](#) as the operations specification, and define their operation requirements
2194 with respect to operations defined in [DSP0223](#).

2195 NOTE This requirement was introduced in version 1.1 of this guide in order to foster more protocol independence in
2196 profiles.

2197 Profiles shall specify support for the GetInstance() operation, as defined in [DSP0223](#), as mandatory on
2198 all ordinary and association class adaptations:

2199 Profiles shall specify support for the following operations, defined in [DSP0223](#), as mandatory on all
2200 ordinary class adaptations:

- 2201 • OpenAssociatedInstances()
- 2202 • OpenEnumerateInstances()
- 2203 • OpenReferenceInstances()

2204 Unless otherwise specified, the OpenAssociatedInstances() and OpenReferenceInstances() shall be
2205 supported for all association class adaptations that reference the ordinary class adaptation or any of its
2206 base adaptations.

2207 The functionality of the following operations, deprecated by DSP0223, is covered by the three “open”
2208 operations above and should not be specified:

- 2209 • AssociatorNames()
- 2210 • Associators()
- 2211 • EnumerateInstanceNames()
- 2212 • EnumerateInstances()
- 2213 • ReferenceNames()
- 2214 • References()

2215 5.19.12.3 Specification of operation requirements for instance creation operations

2216 The operations specifications (see 5.19.12.2) allow the creation of CIM instances based on input CIM
2217 instances provided by clients. In general, it is not required that values are provided in the input CIM
2218 instance for all properties; however, profiles may specify requirements for implementing specific
2219 initialization values (see 5.19.16.2).

2220 As part of operation requirements for instance creation operations, profiles may specify:

- 2221 • Preconditions that an input value is required to be provided in the input instance, or that an
2222 input value is not permitted to be provided in the input instance; such preconditions may be tied
2223 to other conditions specified by the profile.

2224 NOTE Operations specification define that provided values need to be reflected in the created
2225 instance, and how values of properties for which the input instance does not exhibit a value are to be
2226 determined for the created instance. For that reason the reinterpretation of specific values of input
2227 properties that is possible for input parameters of methods (see 5.19.12.3) is not admissible for operations.

- 2228 • Property value initialization constraints unless such are established by the schema (for
2229 example, by means such as the PropertyConstraint qualifier — see [DSP0004](#)).
- 2230 • The effects of the operation with respect to the managed object to be created in (or to be
2231 added to) the managed environment.

2232 NOTE An operations specification can specify semantics for the instance creation operations with
2233 respect to the resulting new instance.

- 2234 • Error reporting requirements as detailed in 5.19.12.6.

2235 The specification of profile requirements for accepting input values for key properties in input instances
2236 for instance creation operations is not recommended, except for reference properties. An implementation
2237 is free to ignore any client provided value for a key property, except those for key reference properties.
2238 Clients should abstain from providing values for key properties other than reference properties in input
2239 instances for instance creation operations.

2240 NOTE The reason behind this requirement is that the implementation is responsible for ensuring the uniqueness of
2241 instances. If clients were allowed to dictate key property values, clashes of instance creation requests from
2242 independent clients would be predestined.

2243 For the creation of CIM instances it is of overriding importance that the lifecycle of a CIM instance is
2244 directly tied to the existence of a managed object in the managed environment that is represented by the
2245 CIM instance; see 5.6.2. A CIM instance can only be created if a respective managed object can be
2246 created (or added to the managed environment) such that the new CIM instance representing that
2247 managed object conforms with all values given by the input CIM instance with initialization constraints
2248 applied; for implementation requirements on instance creation operations, see 7.4.3.2.2.

2249 5.19.12.4 Specification of operations requirements for instance modification operations

2250 The operations specifications (see 5.19.12.2) allow modification of some or all property values of an
2251 instance. An operations specification also can specify semantics for the instance modification operations
2252 with respect to the resulting modified instance. Profiles may specify requirements for implementing
2253 specific modification values (see 5.19.11.2).

2254 As part of operation requirements for instance modification operations, profiles may specify:

- 2255 • Designations for specific properties to be either modifiable or non-modifiable.
 - 2256 – Key properties are non-modifiable and shall not be designated as modifiable.
 - 2257 – Designations already specified in base adaptations should not be repeated or changed.

- 2258 – Through such designations profiles may limit the effects of modification operations such
2259 that only the values of certain properties are affected.
- 2260 • Preconditions that an input value:
- 2261 – Is required to be provided in the input instance, or
- 2262 – Is not permitted to be provided in the input instance
- 2263 Such preconditions may be tied to other conditions specified by the profile.
- 2264 NOTE Operations specification define that provided values need to be reflected in the created
2265 instance, and how values of properties for which the input instance does not exhibit a value are to be
2266 determined for the created instance. For that reason the reinterpretation of specific values of input
2267 properties that is possible for input parameters of methods (see 5.19.12.3) is not admissible for operations.
- 2268 • The effect of property modifications with respect to the managed object to be modified in the
2269 managed environment unless these are apparent (for example by respective mappings of
2270 specific property values to respective states of the managed object).
- 2271 NOTE An operations specification can specify semantics for the instance modification operations with
2272 respect to the resulting modified target instance.
- 2273 • Error reporting requirements as detailed in 5.19.12.6.
- 2274 For the modification of CIM instances it is of overriding importance that a CIM instance is the
2275 representation of (an aspect of) a managed object in the managed environment; see 5.6.2. A CIM
2276 instance can only be modified if the managed object represented by that CIM instance can be modified
2277 such that the CIM instance representing that modified managed object conforms to all values given by the
2278 input CIM instance; for implementation requirements on instance modification operations, see 7.4.3.2.3.
- 2279 **5.19.12.5 Specification of operation requirements for deprecated operations**
- 2280 Profiles shall not define operation requirements for operations that are marked as deprecated in the
2281 operations specification (see 5.19.12.2), except within revisions of existing profiles that retain an
2282 operation requirement for an operation that was marked as deprecated in the operations specification
2283 after the original version of the profile was released.
- 2284 **5.19.12.6 Specification of the reporting of operation errors**
- 2285 The operation requirements and method requirements specified by a profile should contain error reporting
2286 requirements.
- 2287 Each error reporting requirement shall address a particular error situation.
- 2288 Each error reporting requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the
2289 requirement for implementing the error reporting requirement as part of implementing the method or
2290 operation.
- 2291 Because in profiles, error reporting requirements are a part of operation requirements or method
2292 requirements, each error reporting requirement specified in a profile shall be related to an error reporting
2293 requirement specified by the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2) as part of the definition of the
2294 operation. This also applies for method requirements if the method invocations are initiated through an
2295 operation; otherwise, error reporting requirements for methods shall be specified in context of an error
2296 reporting requirement established by the operations specification for method invocations.
- 2297 The error situations addressed by error reporting requirements can overlap. For example, if an instance is
2298 not accessible, that may be caused by security reasons, by technical reasons or by other kinds of failures.
2299 Profiles may specify error reporting requirements with a relative order to each other, such that a particular
2300 error reporting requirement applies before other error reporting requirements. For example, in the case
2301 where an instance is not accessible for several reasons such as security reasons and several technical

2302 reasons, a profile could state that the error reporting requirement for reporting the security reason is to be
2303 applied before any other error reporting requirement.

2304 Note that the operations specification may already have established a relative order among the error
2305 reporting requirements that it specifies. In this case, if the profile establishes an order among the profile
2306 specified error reporting requirements that shall be in compliance with the order specified by the
2307 operations specification.

2308 Profile should define each error reporting requirement through one or more standard messages, as
2309 follows:

- 2310 • If the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2) defines error reporting requirements by means of
2311 standard messages, each error reporting requirement shall reference a standard error
2312 message (that is, a standard message defined in a [DSP0228](#) conformant message registry
2313 with a type of "ERROR") required by the operations specification for the subject operation that
2314 addresses the error situation to be reported.
- 2315 • If the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2) defines error reporting requirements by means of
2316 CIM status codes, each error reporting requirement shall reference a standard error message
2317 defined in [DSP8016](#) that is compatible to a CIM status code required by the operations
2318 specification that is applicable in the error situation to be reported. A compatible standard error
2319 message shall exhibit — through the value of the CIMSTATUSCODE element — a CIM status
2320 code that applies in the error situation, and shall itself be applicable in the error situation to be
2321 reported.
- 2322 • In cases where a mapping of CIM status codes to messages defined in [DSP8016](#) is not
2323 possible, an error reporting requirements may directly reference the CIM status code instead of
2324 a standard error message.
- 2325 • In addition, in all previous cases, an error reporting requirement may refer to one or more
2326 additional standard error messages that apply in the error situation to be reported. These
2327 messages are typically defined in a message registry that is separate from that used by the
2328 operations specification (see 5.19.12.2) and that contains definitions of messages that are
2329 more specific with respect to the domain addressed by the profile.
- 2330 • Profiles may provide additional descriptions as part of error reporting requirements that detail
2331 the error situation in the context of which an error reporting requirement applies with respect to
2332 the management domain addressed by the profile. However, such additional descriptions are
2333 to be understood as implementation hints as to when — with respect to the management
2334 domain — an error reporting requirement applies. The additional descriptions shall not be
2335 understood as a constraint on the error situation that is described by the standard error
2336 messages and CIM status codes. Particularly, clients receiving an error indicator in the form of
2337 a set of standard error messages and a CIM status code shall only rely on the description
2338 provided directly through these elements. Clients shall not make assumptions based on the
2339 additional descriptions provided in profiles, other than that these describe single potentially
2340 possible error situations out of the typically much larger set described by the standard error
2341 messages and the CIM status code.

2342 NOTE The implementation requirements resulting from error reporting requirements are detailed in 7.4.3.4.

2343 5.19.12.7 Operation requirements related to associations

2344 A profile shall define operation requirements for operations that enable association traversal as part of
2345 adaptations of association classes that are referenced by association adaptations; typically such classes
2346 are ordinary classes.

2347 The requirements for association traversal operations with respect to a particular association adaptation
2348 shall be specified separately as part of each referenced adaptation.

2349 The requirements for association traversal operations of a particular adaptation of a class referenced by
2350 one or more association adaptations may be specified separately for each referencing association
2351 adaptation.

2352 For example, consider a profile defines a System adaptation of the CIM_System class, a Device
2353 adaptation of the CIM_LogicalDevice class, and a SystemDevice adaptation of the CIM_SystemDevice
2354 association associating the System adaptation and the Device adaptation. If the association traversal
2355 operation requirements specified on the System adaptation with respect to the SystemDevice association
2356 may differ from those specified on the Device adaptation, they need to be separately specified.

2357 Furthermore, if the profile had also defined a SystemPackaging adaptation of the CIM_SystemPackaging
2358 class, and if the association traversal operation requirements specified on the System adaptation
2359 targeting the Device adaptation through the SystemPackaging adaptation differ from those through the
2360 SystemDevice association adaptation, they need to be separately specified as well.

2361 There is no implied requirement for an association adaptation to be implemented if one or more of the
2362 referenced adaptations are implemented. Similarly, the implementation of referenced adaptations is not
2363 implicitly required if an association adaptation is implemented. For that reason, profiles should ensure that
2364 all adaptations required to express a certain relationship are required as a whole; the preferred modeling
2365 approach in this case are features (see 5.20).

2366 For example, extending the previously described situation with a mandatory System adaptation
2367 associated via a SystemDependency association adaptation to a Device adaptation, a profile should
2368 ensure that if the Device adaptation is implemented, the SystemDevice adaptation is required to be
2369 implemented as well. For example, this could be achieved by defining the SystemDevice adaptation with
2370 the conditional exclusive requirement level, with the condition stating that the optional Device adaptation
2371 is implemented. Another more explicit approach could be defining an optional DevicesExposed feature,
2372 and define both the SystemDevice and the Device adaptations as conditional exclusive, with a feature
2373 implementation condition on the DevicesExposed feature.

2374 **5.19.12.8 Management domain context for operations**

2375 For write operations (for example, the ModifyInstance() operation defined in [DSP0223](#)), it is generally not
2376 sufficient to only describe the expected state of CIM instances after the operation execution is completed.
2377 Instead, profiles should detail the required changes on managed objects in the managed environment
2378 that cause corresponding changes in the CIM instances that represent the affected managed objects.

2379 For example, if an Example Fan profile requires that a fan is active as an effect of executing the
2380 ModifyInstance() operation, that profile shall explicitly state as part of the required operation semantics
2381 that the identified fan shall be activated if the value of the EnabledState property in the input instance is
2382 2 (Enabled), instead of repeating requirements from the operations specification (such as that the
2383 instance identified by the input instance shall adopt the values from the input instance) and/or the
2384 schema. The purpose of this requirement is to precisely instruct implementers about the desired behavior
2385 in the managed environment, and not just about expected changes in the model representation of the
2386 managed environment. Of course, the property requirements for the EnabledState property of the Fan
2387 adaptation need to separately state that the value shall be 2 (Enabled) if and only if the fan is active. For
2388 further rationale, see 5.6.3.

2389 **5.19.13 Instance requirements**

2390 **5.19.13.1 General**

2391 An instance requirement defines how (and in some cases also under which conditions) managed objects
2392 are to be represented by adaptation instances.

2393 The definition of an adaptation in a profile models a particular managed object type or an aspect thereof;
2394 see 5.19. The implementation selects managed objects for representation. The definition of the

2395 adaptation implies the instance requirement to represent the selected managed objects as respective
2396 adaptation instances; profiles are not required to restate this implied instance requirement.

2397 In addition, profiles may define the conditions in the managed environment that require the exposure of
2398 adaptation instances in namespaces; however, profiles should exercise care when stating such instance
2399 requirements in order to avoid requirements that cannot be satisfied.

2400 For example, in the context of an Example Fan profile, consider an instance requirement phrased as
2401 follows: "Each fan shall be represented by a Fan instance." (where "fan" refers to fans in managed
2402 environments, and "Fan" refers to the Fan adaptation defined in that Example Fan profile). It is possible
2403 that some fans in the managed environment do not exhibit a management instrumentation that would
2404 enable a profile implementation to actually discover and control those fans. In these cases a profile
2405 implementation would not be able to comply with the specified instance requirement, because it can
2406 neither detect nor manage those fans without management instrumentation.

2407 **5.19.13.2 Concurrency requirements**

2408 Each profile should define concurrency requirements with regard to instances of adaptations.

2409 For example, a profile defining requirements for a method or operation may require exclusive access to a
2410 subset of the managed environment such that interference from other activities performed on that subset
2411 are serialized. However, care should be exercised in establishing such requirements, because they might
2412 reduce the set of managed environments for which the profile can be implemented.

2413 **5.19.14 Property requirements**

2414 **5.19.14.1 General**

2415 For each adaptation it defines, the subject profile may define property requirements for properties that are
2416 exposed by the adapted class.

2417 **5.19.14.2 Requirement level**

2418 Each property requirement shall be designated with a "presentation" requirement level that determines
2419 the requirement for implementing the property as part implementing the adaptation for the purpose of
2420 presenting information.

2421 In addition, for adaptations with the "instantiated" implementation type (see 5.19.8) that a profile defines
2422 as creatable and/or modifiable by clients, separate requirement levels for specific property values may be
2423 specified:

- 2424 • An "initialization" requirement level that determines if the specific value shall be implemented
2425 as a property initialization value; for details, see 5.19.16.2.
- 2426 • A "modification" requirement level that determines if the specific value shall be implemented as
2427 a property modification value; for details, see 5.19.16.3.

2428 **5.19.14.3 Rules for the repetition of schema requirements**

2429 In adaptations mandatory property requirements shall be defined for all key properties and for all
2430 properties for which the Required qualifier has an effective value of True, unless respective property
2431 requirements are already stated by a base adaptation.

2432 NOTE This requirement aims at relieving profile consumers from analyzing the schema for respective
2433 requirements.

2434 Otherwise, a subject profile should not replicate requirements from the schema or from base profiles
2435 unless needed for establishing additional requirements of the subject profile.

2436 5.19.14.4 Requirements for the specification of property constraints

2437 The base set of permissible property values is defined by schema definition of the adapted class and/or
2438 its superclasses; as a matter of principle, schema definitions cannot be extended by profiles.

2439 A profile may specify constraints and requirements as part of property requirements. Any such constraints
2440 and requirements apply in addition to, and shall not contradict, any constraints and requirements defined
2441 in the adapted class, its superclasses and any base adaptation.

2442 In other words, profiles shall not specify property requirements that extend the set of permissible property
2443 values as constrained in base adaptations, but may specify property requirements that further constrain
2444 the set of permissible property values.

2445 In addition, for adaptations with the "instantiated" implementation type (see 5.19.8), separate value
2446 constraints may be specified for the presentation, the initialization and the modification of the property
2447 value; however, the value constraints for the initialization and modification shall be within those defined
2448 for the presentation.

2449 The schema definition of the adapted class, its superclasses, or any base adaptation may specify rules
2450 that prohibit or establish limitations for the definition of such constraints in general, or under certain
2451 conditions.

2452 Profiles shall not define property requirements for properties that are marked as deprecated in the
2453 schema definition of the adapted class, except within revisions of existing profiles that retain a property
2454 requirement for a property that was marked as deprecated in a subsequent version of the schema after
2455 the original version of the profile was released.

2456 5.19.14.5 Management domain context of properties

2457 As part of every property requirement, the profile shall specify the aspect of managed objects that
2458 represented by adaptation instances and is reflected by the property, unless that aspect is already
2459 precisely established by a base adaptation or an adapted class. For example, an Example Fan profile
2460 referencing the EnabledState property of the CIM_Fan class in its Fan adaptation would state that the
2461 value of the EnabledState property represents the state of the represented fan and relate values of the
2462 value set of the EnabledState property to possible fan states.

2463 5.19.15 Value constraints**2464 5.19.15.1 General**

2465 Profiles may define value constraints for properties, parameters and method return values using various
2466 mechanisms such as restricting a set of distinct values of numeric or string type in a value map, restricting
2467 a numeric value range, restricting bits in a bit map or constraints based on logical expressions of other
2468 constraints.

2469 If a profile defines value constraints, these should be defined allowing for adequate margin with respect to
2470 the implementations ability to represent (aspects of) managed objects by adaptation instances (see 5.19),
2471 and with respect to represent the outcome of a method execution in the method result (see 5.19.11).

2472 Value constraint do not imply value requirements; in other words, it is not required that all the values from
2473 the value set determined by the conjunction of the all value constraints are implemented. However, for
2474 input values, specific input value requirements may be specified (see 5.19.16).

2475 NOTE This guide also establishes specific conventions for the specification of value constraints in profile
2476 specifications; for details, see 6.13.

2477 5.19.15.2 Default values for properties, parameters and method return values

2478 A profile may specify a default value for a property, parameter or method return value. Profile specified
2479 default output values apply in the case where a more specific value is indiscernible by the profile
2480 implementation. For example, a profile could define the empty string "" as a default value for the
2481 ElementName property that is required by the schema to have a non-Null value. In this case that value
2482 would have to be returned in the case where a profile implementation is unable to produce a more
2483 specific value.

2484 NOTE The semantics of profile defined default values differ from schema defined default values as defined in
2485 [DSP0004](#). In the schema default values can only be defined for properties and are considered initialization
2486 constraints; initialization constraints determine the initial value of the property in new instances; see also 5.19.15.2.

2487 5.19.15.3 Value constraints for reference values

2488 Profiles may define constraints as part of property requirements for reference properties in association
2489 adaptations or for properties qualified as REFERENCE in other adaptations, and as part of method
2490 requirement for reference parameters and reference method return values, as follows:

- 2491 • The constraint shall state the adaptation that the reference property refers to. It is required that
2492 the referenced adaptation is defined in the subject profile.
- 2493 • The referenced adaptation shall be compatible with the class that is referenced by the
2494 reference property, parameter or return value in the adapted class; for details, see 5.19.2.
- 2495 • Profiles may constrain the multiplicities of references in association adaptations. These
2496 multiplicities shall be the same as or narrower than the most narrow multiplicity defined in the
2497 adapted class and in any base adaptation and its adapted class.

2498 As a consequence of the first rule, it is not possible that a subject profile can define an association
2499 adaptation that references an adaptation defined in a referencing profile because the referencing profile
2500 and its adaptation are not known in the subject profile. This situation can be solved by defining the
2501 associated adaptation directly in the subject profile, and base the adaptation in the referencing profile on
2502 the new adaptation in the referenced profile. In most cases the adaptation in the subject profile can be
2503 stated as a trivial class adaptation (see 5.19.4), which causes only minimal modeling effort. The
2504 advantage of this approach is that the adaptation dependencies are explicitly defined and it is not left to
2505 the implementer to figure out which adaptation in a referenced profile actually referenced.

2506 For example, consider an Example Fan profile modeling a relationship between a fan and the system that
2507 contains the fan by means of the CIM_SystemDevice association. That profile would model a Fan
2508 adaptation of the CIM_Fan class, a (trivial) FanSystem adaptation of the CIM_System class, and a
2509 FanInSystem adaptation of the CIM_SystemDevice association that references the Fan and the
2510 FanSystem adaptations.

2511 NOTE Version 1.0 of this guide does not clearly separate adaptations (which were called "profile classes" – see
2512 5.19) and CIM classes. DMTF profile class diagrams in component profiles conforming to version 1.0 of this guide
2513 frequently depict "profile classes" from a referencing profile and annotate it with the phrase "See referencing profile".
2514 Implementers of such profiles in context of a particular referencing profile now need to determine which "profile class"
2515 in the referencing profile is actually referenced. This is a trivial task if only one "profile class" for the respective CIM
2516 class is defined in the referencing profile, but causes ambiguities if more than one "profile class" of that CIM class is
2517 defined, and the association reference is not further constrained to reference a particular "profile class".

2518 5.19.15.4 Value constrains through format specifications

2519 Profiles may specify a mechanism that conveys the format for the values of string-typed properties,
2520 method parameters, and method return values.

2521 For some of the format specification mechanisms that a profile may apply, this guide defines rules that
2522 govern the application of these mechanisms, as follows:

- 2523 • If a profile uses regular expressions to define the format, the regular expressions shall conform
2524 to the syntax defined in ANNEX B.
- 2525 • If a profile uses a grammar to define the format, the grammar shall be stated in ABNF (see
2526 [RFC5234](#)). A profile may define extensions and modifications to ABNF; if so, these shall be
2527 documented in the profile.

2528 NOTE The specification of units is established in schema definitions through the use of the PUNIT or the ISPUNIT
2529 qualifiers.

2530 **5.19.15.5 Property non-Null value constraint implied by the requirement level**

2531 If a property is required by a subject profile with either the mandatory requirement level or the conditional
2532 or conditional exclusive requirement level, and the condition being True, the value Null is not admissible
2533 for the property (see 7.4.2).

2534 Profiles may exempt this rule and allow Null as an admissible value; however, such exemptions should be
2535 specified separately for each property where the value Null is admissible.

2536 A respective value constraint is not implied for the use of Null as an input value; however, specific input
2537 value requirements may be defined (see 5.19.16).

2538 **5.19.15.6 Use of the value Null as property or parameter value**

2539 [DSP0223](#) requires that on method invocation values are provided for all input parameters, and on method
2540 return values are returned for all output parameters and for the method return value. However, unless
2541 otherwise required by profiles and/or the schema, Null is a legal value. [DSP0004](#) states that the special
2542 value Null indicates the absence of a value. Profiles should avoid assigning the value Null a semantic
2543 other than that defined in [DSP0004](#). Profiles should specify the implementation behavior in the case of
2544 the absence of an input parameter value (that is, an input value Null). Profiles should specify how the
2545 absence of an output parameter value or of a method return value (that is, an output value Null) is to be
2546 interpreted. This applies likewise to property values in adaptation instances that are used as input or
2547 output values for parameters of methods or operations, or as method return values.

2548 **5.19.16 Input value requirements**

2549 **5.19.16.1 General**

2550 Input value requirements are requirements for the implementation of particular input values.

2551 An input value requirement requires that the input value must be implemented, that is, be accepted when
2552 provided as input, and not be rejected for the reason of not being implemented; however, a rejection for
2553 other reasons is not prohibited. Input value requirements may be specified for specific values of method
2554 input parameters, and — with respect to the initialization or modification of property values — for specific
2555 property values as part of property requirements in adaptations.

2556 NOTE Value requirements for output values can only be specified by means of value constraints (see 5.19.15).
2557 Recall that property values are required to represent the state of the managed environment represented by the
2558 adaptation instance (see 5.19.14.5), and that method return values and method output parameter values are required
2559 to represent the outcome of the method execution (see 5.19.11.2 and 5.19.11.3).

2560 **5.19.16.2 Property initialization value requirement**

2561 Property initialization value requirements are input value requirements that may be specified with property
2562 requirements in the definition of adaptations with an implementation type (see 5.19.16.2) of "instantiated".

- 2563 Property initialization input value requirements shall not be specified in the definition of adaptations with
2564 other implementation types.
- 2565 Each property initialization value requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that
2566 determines the requirement for implementing the value as property initialization value.
- 2567 A property initialization value requirement states that a specific input value for a property shall be
2568 implemented; that is, be accepted when provided through any operation or method that creates instances
2569 of the adaptation (such as the CreateInstance() operation defined in [DSP0223](#), or as methods that take
2570 an embedded adaptation instance as input). A property initialization value requirement is only applicable if
2571 such operations or methods are implemented.
- 2572 Implementing a property initialization value does not preclude its rejection for reasons other than not
2573 being implemented, such as that the state of the managed environment does not currently allow the
2574 instance creation request to be executed with the given input instance.
- 2575 Property initialization value requirements shall only be specified for values that are within the value
2576 constraints established for the property (see 5.19.15). In addition, creation methods or operations may
2577 define separate constraints that limit their specific sets of acceptable values beyond those defined by
2578 property constraints.
- 2579 If, for a possible value, no property initialization value requirement is specified, the implementation may
2580 either accept or reject that value when provided as initialization value.
- 2581 The semantics of the creation operation or method may define how initialization values are processed.
2582 Defining semantics includes the possibility that an initialization value is only considered a hint, such that
2583 the value resulting from the instance creation differs from the provided initialization value. If no specific
2584 semantics are defined, the default shall be that the initialization value is carried over unmodified into the
2585 new instance.
- 2586 **5.19.16.3 Property modification value requirement**
- 2587 Property modification value requirements are input value requirements that may be specified with
2588 property requirements in the definition of adaptations with an implementation type (see 5.19.8) of
2589 "instantiated". Property modification value requirements shall not be specified in the definition of
2590 adaptations with other implementation types.
- 2591 Each property modification value requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that
2592 determines the requirement for implementing the value as property modification value.
- 2593 A property modification value requirement states that a specific value for a property must be
2594 implemented; that is, be accepted when provided through any operation or method that modifies
2595 instances of the adaptation (such as the ModifyInstance() operation defined in [DSP0223](#), or as methods
2596 that take an embedded adaptation instance as input). A property modification value requirement is only
2597 applicable if such operations or methods are implemented.
- 2598 Implementing a property modification value does not preclude its rejection for reasons other than not
2599 being implemented, such as that the state of the managed environment does not currently allow the
2600 instance modification request to be executed with the given input instance.
- 2601 Property modification value requirements shall only be specified for values that are within the value
2602 constraints established for the property (see 5.19.16.3). In addition, modification methods or operations
2603 may define separate constraints that limit their specific sets of acceptable values beyond those defined by
2604 property constraints.
- 2605 If, for a possible value, no property modification value requirement is specified, the implementation may
2606 either accept or reject that value when provided as modification value.

2607 The semantics of the modification operation or method may define how modification values are
2608 processed. Defining semantics includes the possibility that a modification value is only considered a hint,
2609 such that the value resulting from the instance modification differs from the provided modification value. If
2610 no specific semantics is defined, the default shall be that the modification value is carried over unmodified
2611 into the target instance.

2612 **5.19.16.4 Input parameter value requirement**

2613 Input parameter value requirements are input value requirements that may be specified for input
2614 parameters as part of method requirements in adaptation definitions. Value requirements shall not be
2615 specified for output parameters (for reasons detailed in 5.19.16.1).

2616 Each input parameter value requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the
2617 requirement for implementing the value as input parameter value.

2618 An input parameter value requirement states that a specific value for an input parameter shall be
2619 implemented; that is, be accepted when provided as actual value in a method invocation.

2620 Implementing an input parameter value does not preclude its rejection for reasons other than not being
2621 implemented, such as that the state of the managed environment does not currently allow the method
2622 execution request to be executed with the given set of input parameter values.

2623 Input parameter value requirements shall only be specified for values that are within the value constraints
2624 established for the input parameter (see 5.19.16.4).

2625 If, for a particular parameter, no parameter input value requirement is specified, the implementation
2626 behavior with respect to accepting input values for that parameter is undefined.

2627 If, for a possible value, no input parameter value requirement is specified, the implementation behavior
2628 with respect to accepting that value as input is undefined.

2629 **5.19.16.5 ACID requirements**

2630 Profile authors should be aware that protocols, WBEM server infrastructure, and adaptation
2631 implementations affect the behavior with respect to ACID properties. A profile may define ACID
2632 requirements for operations and methods specified by the profile; if specified, ACID requirements shall be
2633 defined at the level of the profile-defined interface between a WBEM client (or a WBEM listener) and a
2634 WBEM server. Profile-defined ACID requirements shall be stated in a protocol-agnostic manner.

2635 NOTE ACID properties for operations and methods are defined in operations specifications (see 5.19.12.2).

2636 If profiles define ACID requirements, these shall not contradict other specification rules established by this
2637 guide, such as requirements for the specification of instance requirements (see 5.19.13 or that for the
2638 specification of operations requirements (see 5.19.12).

2639 **5.19.17 Indication adaptations**

2640 **5.19.17.1 General**

2641 The requirements defined this subclause apply in addition to the requirements defined in 5.19 for the
2642 definition of adaptations of all kinds of classes.

2643 The approach detailed in this subclause aims at relieving profiles that define indications from having to
2644 define many of the infrastructure elements related to indications, such as indication filters and filter
2645 collections. This is because such infrastructure elements are already implied by definitions of [DSP1054](#).
2646 Particularly in the case of alert indications, the specification effort in profiles is typically reduced to just
2647 define an adaptation based on the AlertIndication adaptation defined [DSP1054](#), along with a reference to
2648 an alert message for each event that is to be reported.

2649 A profile that defines indications may reference [DSP1054](#); if a profile references [DSP1054](#), it shall comply
2650 with the requirements defined in [DSP1054](#) for referencing profiles. A profile referencing [DSP1054](#) may
2651 define its indication adaptations based on those defined in [DSP1054](#). As usual, the "based on"
2652 relationship to basic indication adaptations defined in [DSP1054](#) may be indirect, with intermediate other
2653 base adaptations. In either case, the requirements of the base indication adaptation defined in [DSP1054](#)
2654 implicitly applies, including the requirements for related indication filters and filter collections.

2655 An alert indication adaptation that is defined based on the AlertIndication adaptation defined in [DSP1054](#)
2656 may reference alert messages defined in a message registry. For each message reference, the alert
2657 indication adaptation shall state the message registry reference (see 5.22) referring to the defining
2658 message registry, and uniquely identify the message by stating its message ID. The message ID is the
2659 concatenation of the value of the PREFIX attribute and the SEQUENCE_NUMBER attribute from the
2660 MESSAGE_ID element that defines the alert message within the message registry. Furthermore, the alert
2661 indication adaptation shall specify how the definitions of the referenced alert messages apply, unless
2662 such information is already sufficiently provided by the definition of the AlertIndication adaptation defined
2663 in [DSP1054](#), by the respective alert message definitions, by the *Message Registry XML Schema*
2664 *Specification* (see [DSP8020](#)), or by a combination of these definitions. For rules about how to conform to
2665 these requirements in profile specification documents, see 6.15.7.4.3.

2666 5.19.17.2 Indication-generation requirements

2667 For each indication adaptation one or more indication-generation requirements shall be defined. Each
2668 indication-generation requirement shall express the situation that causes the indication to be generated;
2669 in most situations such descriptions just refer the event reported by the indication, but additional
2670 constraints may apply.

2671 The basic indication adaptations defined in [DSP1054](#) already define indication-generation requirements.
2672 As with any requirement defined by a base adaptation, the indication-generation requirements defined by
2673 base indication adaptations (such as those defined in [DSP1054](#)) implicitly apply in context-derived
2674 indication adaptations; however, if needed, a derived indication adaptation may refine the
2675 indication-generation requirements of its base indication adaptation(s).

2676 5.19.18 Examples of class adaptations

2677 An example of a simple adaptation that does not establish additional constraints is a profile that
2678 addresses the management domain of computer system management, adapts the CIM_ComputerSystem
2679 class modeling computer systems, and does not specify constraints on properties. In this case a
2680 conformant implementation of that profile's adaptation of the CIM_ComputerSystem class is only required
2681 to show non-Null values for the properties exposed by the CIM_ComputerSystem class that are either key
2682 properties, or properties with the REQUIRED qualifier having a value of True.

2683 Typical examples of adaptations that define additional constraints are

- 2684 • A profile addressing the management of systems defining an adaptation of the
2685 CIM_ComputerSystem class for the representation of systems, and defining requirements and
2686 constraints only for a subset of the properties exposed by the CIM_ComputerSystem class
- 2687 • A profile addressing the management of system memory defining an adaptation of the
2688 CIM_Memory class for the representation of system memory, and constraining that the value of
2689 the EnabledState property shall be 2 (Enabled)
- 2690 • A profile addressing the management of disks defining an adaptation of the
2691 CIM_StorageExtent class for the representation of RAID disks, and constraining that the value
2692 of the ErrorMethodology property shall match the pattern "RAID3|RAID4|RAID5"
- 2693 • A profile addressing the management of floppy disks defining an adaptation of the
2694 CIM_DiskDrive class for the representation of floppy disk drives, and constraining that each
2695 instance of the CIM_DiskDrive class representing a floppy drive shall be associated with the

- 2696 instance of the CIM_ComputerSystem class representing the containing system
- 2697 An example for multiple adaptations of a class in one profile is a profile defining an adaptation of the
2698 CIM_AllocationCapabilities class to model the allocation capabilities of a resource pool and to model the
2699 mutability of resource allocations.
- 2700 An example for multiple adaptations of a class in multiple profiles is the CIM_System class that is adapted
2701 by many profiles to model very different forms of systems such as general purpose systems, network
2702 switches, storage arrays, or storage controllers. Each adaptation is implemented separately, and all of the
2703 implementations need to coexist within one WBEM server.
- 2704 An example for multiple adaptations of a class in multiple profiles with adaptation dependencies is the
2705 adaptation of the CIM_Processor class by two profiles:
- 2706 • A generic CPU profile defining an adaptation of the CIM_Processor class modeling processors
2707 in general
- 2708 For example, this profile could be implemented for physical processors in physical systems,
2709 exploiting management instrumentation provided by software components installed in the
2710 physical system. The set of instances controlled by that profile implementation would be
2711 CIM_Processor instances representing host processors.
- 2712 • A processor resource virtualization profile defining an adaptation of the CIM_Processor class
2713 modeling virtual processors, and requiring that this adaptation be based on that of the
2714 referenced generic CPU profile
- 2715 Typically this implies a separate profile implementation of the referenced generic CPU profile,
2716 exploiting management instrumentation provided by the virtualization platform in the context of
2717 which virtual processors exist. The set of instances provided by that profile implementation
2718 would be CIM_Processor instances representing virtual processors. The advantage resulting
2719 from the reuse of the CIM_Processor adaptation is that CIM_Processor instances representing
2720 virtual processors now are visible through the interface defined by the generic CPU profile;
2721 consequently, a client could manage the virtual processors through that interface in the same
2722 way as in the physical case. However, it should be noted that in this case the set of
2723 CIM_Processor instances is disjoint from the set CIM_Processor instances that represent the
2724 host processors in the physical case.
- 2725 As detailed in clause 6, a profile implementation is required to conform to the definitions of the profile and
2726 those of referenced profiles. More specifically, an implementation of an adaptation is required to satisfy all
2727 requirements of all base adaptations, including instance requirements.

2728 5.20 Features

2729 5.20.1 Introduction

2730 A feature is a named profile element. A feature groups the decisions for the implementation of one or
2731 more profile elements into a single decision. This grouping is established by defining the implementation
2732 of other profile element conditional on the implementation of the feature.

2733 5.20.2 General feature requirements

2734 A feature should bear a relationship to functionality in the profile or in the management domain. Profiles
2735 shall provide a functional description of each defined feature.

2736 Profiles should preferably define a feature instead of a chain of interdependent definitions in order to
2737 make decision points more explicit for implementers and ease the discovery of implementation
2738 capabilities for clients.

2739 5.20.3 Feature name

2740 A profile shall define a name for each feature it defines; the name shall be in conformance with the
2741 naming conventions defined in 5.18.

2742 5.20.4 Feature requirement level

2743 Profiles shall define their own features with a requirement level of optional, conditional, or conditional
2744 exclusive.

2745 Profiles may define constraints on the implementation of features defined within the same or within
2746 referenced profiles; for example, a referencing profile may require implementation of a feature that is
2747 defined as optional in a referenced profile.

2748 5.20.5 Feature granularity

2749 Feature granularity affects the discoverability and availability of features. Two kinds of feature granularity
2750 are possible: profile granularity and instance granularity.

2751 • Features with profile granularity are either generally available or not available within a
2752 particular profile implementation. Feature discoverability is defined at a global level, such that if
2753 the feature is available, it is available for all instances affected by definitions that depend in the
2754 feature.

2755 • Features with instance granularity are available only for certain instances. Feature
2756 discoverability is defined at an adaptation instance level, such that the availability of the feature
2757 is indicated only for certain adaptation instances that conform to additional requirements.

2758 Profiles shall define the granularity of each feature by indicating whether the feature is defined either with
2759 profile granularity or with instance granularity; if defined with instance granularity, profile shall state an
2760 adaptation and the conditions for which instances of that adaptation the feature is required to be
2761 available.

2762 An example of a feature with profile granularity might be a FanStateManagement feature of an
2763 Example Fan profile. If the feature is available (and discoverable for example by means of a property
2764 value in a global capabilities instance), fan state management is available for any instance of that profile's
2765 Fan adaptation.

2766 5.20.6 Feature discovery

2767 Feature discovery aims at enabling clients to discover the availability of features.

2768 It is highly recommended that a profile defines at least one mechanism that facilitates discovery of feature
2769 availability as part of a profile implementation.

2770 Each discovery mechanism shall be defined such that the availability and the unavailability of the feature
2771 can be discovered.

2772 If more than one discovery mechanism is defined for a particular feature, one of them shall be designated
2773 as preferred.

2774 An example of a feature discovery mechanism is a specific value constraint for a property value in a
2775 capabilities instance. For example, an Example Fan profile could define the preferred discovery path for
2776 the availability of its FanElementNameEdit feature by requiring that if the FanElementNameEdit feature is
2777 available for a fan, there is an associated instance of the CIM_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities class
2778 for which the value of the ElementNameEdit property is True. These capabilities instances could be
2779 combined into one shared instance that is associated to those Fan instances for which the feature is
2780 available.

2781 The discovery mechanism described in the previous paragraph could be modified for features with
2782 instance granularity by requiring specific capabilities instances instead of global ones.

2783 Another example of a discovery mechanism applicable for features with instance granularity is the
2784 presence of an associated instance in the context of an instance for which the feature can apply. For
2785 example, this is the case for the Fan instances described in the last example in 5.20.5, but only in the
2786 case where the FanSpeedSensor feature is supported for those fans that are represented by Fan
2787 instances with an associated FanSpeedSensor instance.

2788 **5.20.7 Feature requirements**

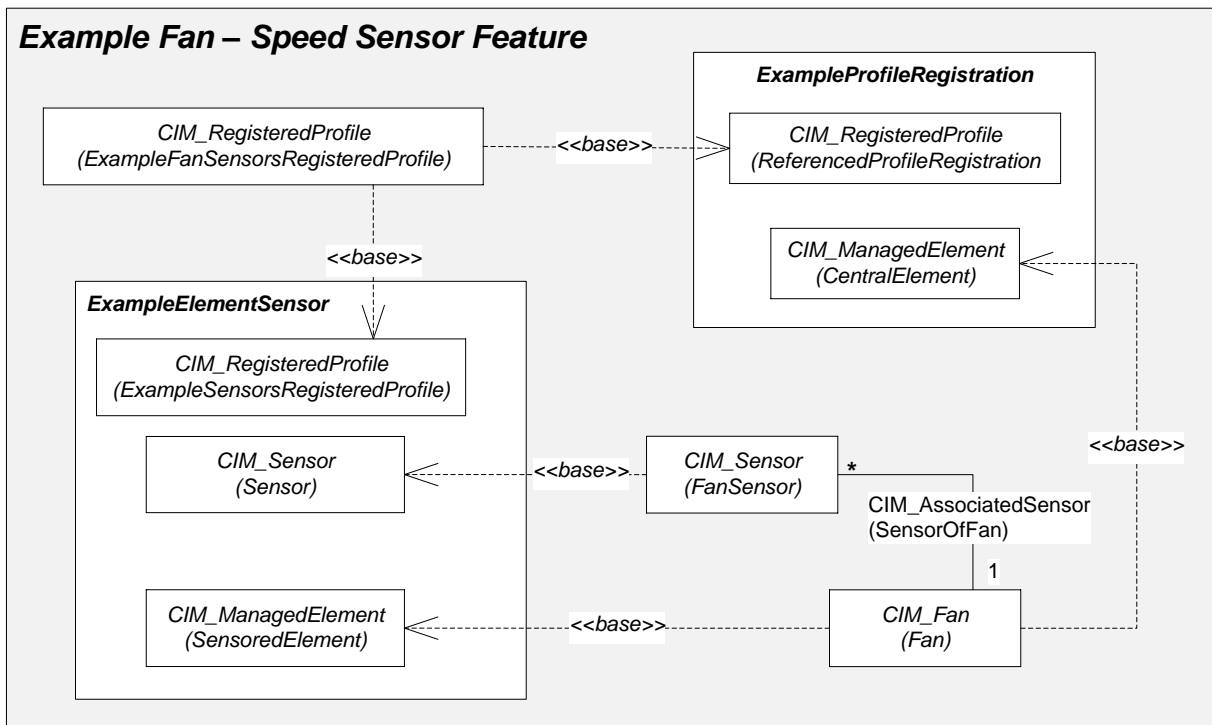
2789 Feature requirements are the implementation requirements resulting from the commitment to implement a
2790 feature. The commitment can result from a deliberate decision of the implementer, but in the case of
2791 conditional features can also be the result of a True condition. Feature requirements are not defined as
2792 an integral part of the feature. Instead, they are specified as conditional requirements for other profile
2793 definitions such as referenced profiles, adaptations, property requirements, method requirements,
2794 operation requirements, or metric requirements. This approach enables the specification of profile
2795 elements that depend on more than one feature.

2796 A profile shall define feature requirements in terms of requiring otherwise optional profile elements as
2797 conditional or conditional exclusive with feature implementation conditions (see 5.9.3), or by defining
2798 additional constraints. Profiles shall use the following mechanisms to define feature requirements:

- 2799 • Defining profile elements as conditional or conditional exclusive with respect to the feature
2800 implementation; this applies to
 - 2801 – profile references
 - 2802 – Otherwise optional, conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements within referenced
2803 profiles, such as features, adaptations, property requirements, or method requirements
 - 2804 – adaptations
 - 2805 – base adaptations
 - 2806 – property requirements in adaptations
 - 2807 – method requirements in adaptations
 - 2808 – operation requirements in adaptations
 - 2809 – error reporting requirements in adaptations
 - 2810 – metric requirements in adaptations
- 2811 • Defining constraints that depend on implementation of the feature

2812 NOTE Clause 6 defines requirements for implementations of profiles, including those of conditional profile
2813 elements. See clause 6 for the implementation requirements resulting from features.

2814 5.20.8 Feature example



2815

2816

Figure 9 – Example Feature

2817 Figure 9 depicts the class adaptations of the FanSpeedSensor feature. For example, the Example Fan
 2818 Speed Sensor feature defines a relationship to the Example Sensors profile, as depicted by the
 2819 ExampleElementSensor rectangle on the left side that depicts the reference to that profile.

2820 In this example, it is assumed that the Example Fan profile defines a FanSpeedSensor feature that is
 2821 conditional on the existence of the adaptation (SensorOfFan) between the Fan and the Fan Sensor (see
 2822 5.9.4). Consequently an implementer who implements the Example Fan profile for a particular type of
 2823 managed environment (for example, computer systems produced by a particular vendor) would have to
 2824 determine whether fans with sensors potentially exist in that type of managed environment. If this is the
 2825 case, the SensorOfFan association signals that the FanSpeedSensor feature has been implemented.

2826 NOTE It is a typical situation that — as in this example — the implementation of a feature is only required if the
 2827 managed environment potentially exhibits a particular characteristic (for example, potentially contains fans with
 2828 sensors). At implementation time the implementer needs to check whether the characteristic is exhibited by the type
 2829 of managed environment for which the profile is implemented. If that is the case, the feature driven implementation
 2830 requirements become effective and need to be implemented.

2831 Furthermore, in this example it is assumed that individual fans in the managed environment may or may
 2832 not have sensors. This is expressed by the "*" multiplicity on the SensorOfFan association adaptation. If
 2833 must also be stated in the form of normative definitions in the Example Fan profile. A further assumption
 2834 in this example is that the Example Fan profile defines the FanSpeedSensor feature with a granularity of
 2835 "Fan instance," and defines the preferred discovery mechanism for the feature by stating that the feature
 2836 is supported for a particular Fan instance if a FanSensor instance is associated through a SensorOfFan
 2837 association adaptation instance. The instance granularity of the feature in effect requires the profile
 2838 implementation to provide feature-required elements only for those Fan instances that represent a fan
 2839 with a sensor.

2840 NOTE Features with instance granularity allow mandating presence of the feature only for the CIM representation
2841 of specific managed objects that exhibit a certain behavior or functional element (such as fans with sensors). Feature
2842 implementations need to detect and respectively handle these situations at runtime. Typically, feature discovery for
2843 features with instance granularity is also defined on a per-instance basis, such that from a client perspective the
2844 feature is present only for instances exposing the characteristic.

2845 A client would discover the presence of the FanSpeedSensor feature for a particular Fan instance by
2846 traversing from the Fan instance through SensorOfFan to FanSensor instances; the presence of such
2847 instances would indicate the presence of the FanSpeedSensor feature for the Fan instance.

2848 An alternate discovery path for the FanSpeedSensor feature is defined through the
2849 ExampleFanSensorsRegisteredProfile instance associated through the CIM_ReferencedProfile
2850 association to the ExampleFanRegisteredProfile instance representing the implemented version of the
2851 Example Fan profile. This is depicted by showing the ExampleFanSensorsRegisteredProfile adaptation
2852 based on the ReferencedRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Profile Registration profile. The
2853 ReferencedRegisteredProfile adaptation in turn requires the implementation of the
2854 CIM_ReferencedProfile association to the CentralElement adaptation. Thus, a client inspecting an
2855 implemented version of the Example Fan profile as represented by an ExampleFanRegisteredProfile
2856 instance can detect that the FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented by traversing the
2857 CIM_ReferencedProfile association to an ExampleFanSensorsRegisteredProfile instance. If that instance
2858 exists, this indicates that the FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented in general; however, because in
2859 this example the FanSpeedSensor feature is defined with a granularity of "Fan instance", the feature is
2860 available only for those Fan instances that represent fans with sensors.

2861 If the FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented, all other profile definitions that are conditional on this
2862 feature effectively become implementation-required; see clause 6 for an algorithm allowing the
2863 determination of all implementation-required profile elements in the context of the profile implementation
2864 of one or more referenced profiles. Particularly in this example, each fan equipped with a fan speed
2865 sensor needs to be represented by a Fan instance that is based on the SensoredElement adaptation of
2866 the Example Sensors profile.

2867 5.21 Profile references

2868 5.21.1 General

2869 A profile reference is a named profile element within the referencing profile. A profile reference references
2870 a profile by stating the type of the profile reference (see 5.21.2), and by identifying the minimally required
2871 version of the referenced profile (see 5.21.3). In addition, the use of the referenced profile in the context
2872 of the referencing profile should be described.

2873 The requirements and constraints for adaptations of the referenced profile are logically incorporated into
2874 the requirements and constraints of the referencing profile.

2875 NOTE Incorporation as a result of a profile reference is at the specification level and does not imply how the
2876 implementation of each element specified collectively by the referencing and its referenced profiles is delivered.

2877 Profile derivation establishes another profile as a base profile of the subject profile; profile derivation is
2878 detailed in 5.14.1.

2879 Other types of profile reference establish a use of the referenced profile within the context of the
2880 referencing profile. It is possible that a subject profile defines multiple uses of a particular profile; in this
2881 case the subject profile references that profile multiple times, each time for a separately named use. For
2882 example, an Example Fan profile, addressing the management domain of fans in systems, could
2883 reference an Example Sensors profile for the representation of sensors monitoring fan speed and for
2884 temperature sensors monitoring the temperature of cooled elements.

2885 Scoping specifies the primary relationship between adaptations of the referencing profile to those of the
2886 referenced profile, see 5.14.4.

2887 A profile shall not reference its previous versions.

2888 The definition of cyclic profile references is prohibited between a base profile and a derived profile, but
2889 allowed otherwise. Additional restrictions apply in context of cyclic references between profiles. For
2890 example, it is not possible to define cyclic relationships between adaptations; for details, see 5.19.2.

2891 An example of cyclic references between profiles is a profile A that defines a mandatory reference to a
2892 profile B, and that profile B defines a mandatory reference back to profile A. Another example is an
2893 autonomous profile that defines a profile reference to each of its component profiles, and each
2894 component profile refers back to the autonomous profile.

2895 **NOTE** Generally, component profiles do not reference their scoping profile.

2896 5.21.2 Types of profile references

2897 A referencing profile shall indicate the type of reference by using the appropriate keyword: **Derivation**,
2898 **Mandatory**, **Conditional**, **Conditional Exclusive**, **Optional**, or **Prohibited**. These types are further
2899 specified by the following clauses.

2900 If the referenced profile is included into an implementation, the definitions and requirements of the
2901 referenced profiles become part of the set of definitions and requirements that are effective for the
2902 referencing profile. Clause 6 details the determination of the definitions and requirements that apply for an
2903 implementation of a set of profiles.

2904 Profile references have one of the following implementation requirements:

2905 **Derivation**

2906 A derivation keyword indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile apply and are the base for the
2907 referencing profile, as detailed in 5.14.1. The referenced profile is called a base profile, and the
2908 referencing profile is termed a derived profile. From a client point of view, a derived profile is substitutable
2909 for a base profile. As required in 5.14.1, at most one direct base profile shall be established per subject
2910 profile.

2911 **Mandatory**

2912 A mandatory keyword indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile shall be implemented as
2913 specified by the referencing profile. In this case, the referenced profile is termed a mandatory profile of
2914 the referencing profile.

2915 **Conditional**

2916 A conditional keyword indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile shall be implemented as
2917 specified if the specified conditions apply in the context of the referencing profile. In this case, the
2918 referenced profile is termed a conditional profile of the referencing profile.

2919 **Conditional exclusive**

2920 A conditional exclusive keyword indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile shall be
2921 implemented as specified if the specified conditions apply in the context of the referencing profile, and
2922 shall not be implemented if the specified conditions do not apply. In this case, the referenced profile is
2923 termed a conditional exclusive profile of the referencing profile.

2924 **Optional**

2925 An optional keyword indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile shall be implemented as
2926 specified if it is implemented, but the choice of whether to implement is left to the implementer. In this
2927 case, the referenced profile is termed an optional profile of the referencing profile.

2928 **Prohibited**

2929 A prohibited keyword indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile shall not be implemented.

2930 A referencing profile shall indicate the type of profile reference by using the respective keyword, as
2931 designated in **bold face** in the previous list.

2932 **5.21.3 Identification of the minimally required version of a referenced profile**

2933 The identification of the minimally required version of a referenced profile shall be stated with all of the
2934 following:

- 2935 • The registered profile name of the referenced profile (see 5.11.2)
- 2936 • The major version identifier, the minor version identifier and optionally the update identifier of
2937 the registered profile version of the referenced profile (see 5.11.3). The update identifier should
2938 only be used in cases where dependencies on the referenced update version exist that are not
2939 already addressed by the minor version.
- 2940 • The registered organization (see 5.11.4) of the referenced profile

2941 Regardless of whether an update identifier is stated, the latest published update version with the stated
2942 major and minor version identifier is referenced; in other words, while an update identifier identifies the
2943 minimally required update version, it shall be interpreted as referring to the latest update version
2944 published after the minimally required update version. For further details, see [DSP4014](#).

2945 **5.21.4 Prohibition of the relaxation of requirements**

2946 A referencing profile shall not redefine mandatory definitions of referenced profiles as conditional or
2947 optional and shall not redefine conditional definitions of a referenced profile as optional.

2948 A referencing profile shall not remove any constraints established by its referenced profiles.

2949 **5.21.5 Rules for the repetition of content from referenced profiles**

2950 A referencing profile shall not repeat content of its referenced profiles unless it establishes additional
2951 constraints. Even in this case, repetitions should be avoided unless necessary to establish a context for
2952 the additional constraints.

2953 NOTE For rules on the repetition of schema content as part of property requirements, see 5.19.14.3.

2954 **5.21.6 Rules for derived adaptations**

2955 A profile may define adaptations based on adaptations defined in referenced profiles; for details, see
2956 5.19.2 and 5.19.7.

2957 In this case the profile relationships to each profile defining one or more base adaptations shall be
2958 defined in compliance with the following rules:

2959 If mandatory base adaptations are defined, the relationship to each referenced profile defining a
2960 mandatory base adaptation shall be mandatory or derivation.

2961 If conditional base adaptations are defined, the relationship to each referenced profile defining a
2962 conditional base adaptation shall be mandatory, derivation, conditional, or conditional exclusive. In the
2963 case of conditional or conditional exclusive, the condition shall be at least the conjunction of all individual
2964 conditions, or stronger.

2965 **5.22 Registry references**

2966 A registry reference is a named profile element that references a registry by stating the type of the
2967 referenced registry and by identifying the minimally required version of the referenced registry. A subject
2968 profile defining registry references should provide a description that details the use of each referenced
2969 registry within the subject profile.

- 2970 A registry reference shall be assigned a name as defined in 5.18.
- 2971 Profiles may reference message registries and metric registries.
- 2972 Message registries are registries that conform to [DSP0228](#) and contain message definitions.
- 2973 Metric registries are registries that conform to [DSP8020](#) and contain metric definitions.
- 2974 NOTE The use of a local name for registry references provides for the possibility of overrides if subsequent
2975 versions of a profile need to refer to a different registry that compatibly supersedes the originally referenced registry;
2976 see 5.14.2.6. Furthermore, the local name is used to identify the registry when referencing elements defined within
2977 the registry.
- 2978 The type of the referenced registry shall be either message registry or metric registry.
- 2979 The identification of the minimally required version of the referenced registry shall be stated with all of the
2980 following:
- 2981 • The unique identifier of the registry as assigned by the owning organization. For registries
2982 conforming to DSP0228 or DSP8020, this is the value of the ID attribute; the fully qualified
2983 XPATH location of the ID attribute in both types of registry is
2984 /REGISTRY/REGISTRY_DECLARATION/IDENTIFICATION/@ID.
 - 2985 • The major version identifier, the minor version identifier, and optionally, the update identifier of
2986 the registry. The update identifier should only be used in cases where dependencies on the
2987 update version exist that are not already addressed by the minor version. Regardless of
2988 whether an update identifier is stated, the latest published update version with the stated major
2989 and minor version identifier is referenced; in other words, while an update identifier identifies
2990 the minimally required update version, it shall be interpreted as referring to the latest update
2991 version published after the minimally required update version. For further details, see
2992 [DSP4014](#).
 - 2993 • The organization that owns the registry
- 2994 Profiles may refer to messages defined in message registries, as part of their other definitions.
- 2995 As part of their other definitions, profiles may refer to metric definitions defined in metric registries.

2996 5.23 State descriptions

- 2997 State descriptions may be provided as part of a use case, but may be provided separately and be
2998 referenced other parts of the profile, particularly use cases.
- 2999 State descriptions defined outside of a use case are named profile elements that describe the state of an
3000 instance of (a subset of) the model defined by a profile at a particular point in time.
- 3001 State descriptions within a use case may be named for the purpose of referencing them across use cases
3002 defined in the same profile.
- 3003 State descriptions should be stated in terms of adaptation instances, their properties with actual values,
3004 and by stating which managed object is represented. Only adaptation instances that are involved in the
3005 processing of referencing use cases need to be described. Likewise, for each stated adaptation instance
3006 the set of stated property value pairs may be constricted to those relevant in referencing use cases.
- 3007 Within state descriptions, adaptation instances may be named for the purpose of referencing them. For a
3008 particular adaptation instance, these names are required to be unique only within the scope of the state
3009 description; in other words, the use of the same name for an adaptation instance in two unrelated state
3010 descriptions does not imply the same adaptation instance. References to adaptation instances should
3011 ensure that the context to their state description is established.

3012 State descriptions may be expressed in the form of UML object diagrams; for details, see 6.9.3.

3013 **5.24 Use cases**

3014 **5.24.1 General**

3015 Profiles should define use cases that demonstrate the use of the interface defined by the profile. The
3016 purpose of use cases is to illustrate the steps required to perform a management task by means of the
3017 interface defined by the profile, and the effects on managed objects in a managed environment and their
3018 CIM representation in the course of performing that task.

3019 A use case is a named profile element.

3020 A use case defines the interaction of an external client and an implementation in the execution of steps
3021 required to be performed in the realization of functionality defined in the profile. Clients may be programs,
3022 such as CIM clients, or other external entities, such as a person using a switch attached to the system.
3023 Use cases should represent a complete task from the perspective of the client; this may involve multiple
3024 CIM operations or methods.

3025 It is emphasized that use cases do not define functionality. Instead, use cases *apply* functionality that is
3026 defined by the profile. For that reason use cases are not considered as normative elements of a profile,
3027 but as essential informative parts that detail potential client activities enabled through implementations of
3028 the profile.

3029 NOTE The definition of use cases given in this subclause calls for a precise formal specification of the invocation of
3030 methods and operations that are fully specified by the profile and its referenced specifications. This definition of use
3031 cases is different from that commonly used in software development where a use case informally describes a
3032 required behavior of a yet to be developed software component.

3033 Use cases should not contain or repeat normative requirements. Normative requirements are defined by
3034 other parts of the profile such as the definition of adaptations. However, use cases may informally detail
3035 expected effects in the managed environment and respective changes in the CIM model defined by the
3036 profile.

3037 Each required operation or method should be applied by at least one use case. A use case may apply
3038 zero or more methods, and a particular operation or method may be applied by more than one use case.

3039 **5.24.2 Requirements for the definition of preconditions**

3040 For each use case the preconditions shall be defined.

3041 Preconditions are state descriptions (see 5.23) that describe the *initial* state of an instance of (a subset of)
3042 the CIM model defined by the profile.

3043 Additional preconditions may be stated in terms of managed objects. In exceptional cases, preconditions
3044 may be stated exclusively in terms of the managed objects.

3045 Preconditions may refer to the outcome of other use cases, enabling chaining of use cases.

3046 **5.24.3 Requirements for the definition of flows of activities**

3047 Flows of activities should be stated as sequences of steps; however, steps may be skipped or iterated
3048 depending on the result of other steps.

3049 Each step should be described in terms of methods and operations that are defined by the subject profile
3050 or by referenced profiles in the form of method requirements.

3051 For each use case step, the following types of provisions should be stated:

- 3052 • The instance on which an operation or method is performed
- 3053 • The name of the operation or method
- 3054 • The names and values of input parameters relevant to the use case
- 3055 • The expected effect on the managed environment
- 3056 • The corresponding changes on the CIM model
- 3057 • The names and values of output parameters relevant to the use case
- 3058 • The expected return values, and the corresponding situations that result in the managed
3059 environment
- 3060 • The expected exceptions, and the corresponding situations that result in the managed
3061 environment

3062 Use cases may refer to other use cases, such that the steps defined by the referenced use cases are
3063 effectively embedded as part of the referencing use case.

3064 **5.24.4 Requirements for the definition of postconditions**

3065 For each use case, the postconditions should be defined if the execution of the use case caused changes
3066 in the CIM model defined by the profile.

3067 Postconditions are state descriptions (see 5.23) that describe the *resulting* state of (a subset of) the CIM
3068 model defined by the profile after the use case was processed. Postconditions shall be separately defined
3069 for the various possible outcomes of processing the use case, such as success and failures.

3070 Additional postconditions may be stated in terms of managed objects. In exceptional cases,
3071 postconditions may be stated exclusively in terms of managed objects.

3072 NOTE As described in 5.6.3 the effect of executing a method or operation on a CIM instance first effects a change
3073 in the managed object in the managed environment that is represented by that CIM instance; only after that change is
3074 processed, the CIM instances representing aspects of the changed managed object will exhibit corresponding
3075 changes in terms of changed property values. However, the state of managed objects may change fast and
3076 frequently; consequently, it is possible that the state of a managed object as viewed through a CIM instance obtained
3077 by a client in a subsequent step after the execution of a use case exposes a state that already differs from the state
3078 that is expected as the result of the use case execution.

3079 **6 Specification requirements**

3080 **6.1 General**

3081 Clause 6 defines the requirements for profile specifications. Profile specifications are documents
3082 containing the definition of one or more profiles in textual form.

3083 Clause 6 focuses on formal text document aspects. In addition, all requirements stated in clause 5 apply
3084 to profile specification documents.

3085 A profile specification published by DMTF shall conform to all requirements of this guide; in addition the
3086 requirements of ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 apply.

3087 **6.2 Profile and profile specification conformance**

3088 A profile is conformant to this guide if it satisfies all normative requirements defined in this guide for
3089 profiles.

3090 A profile specification is conformant to this guide if it satisfies all normative requirements defined in this
3091 guide for profile specifications.

3092 **6.3 Machine readable profiles**

3093 A profile may be specified in XML using the schema defined by [DSP8028](#). The resulting XML document
3094 can be transformed into a PDF document that will be conformant to the requirements of this specification.

3095 **6.4 DMTF conformance requirements**

3096 The following rules apply to management profiles and management profile specifications owned by
3097 DMTF:

3098 Management profiles owned by DMTF shall conform to this guide.

3099 Management profile specifications owned by DMTF shall conform to this guide. The normative
3100 requirements for profile specifications are detailed in clause 6. In addition, the standard DMTF
3101 specification format (see [DSP1000](#)) applies to DMTF-owned management profile specifications.

3102 NOTE Other organizations can create their own guidelines for management profile specifications that they publish.
3103 If such profile specifications are to be conformant to this guide, those guidelines would have to incorporate, reference,
3104 and optionally extend the requirements defined in this guide.

3105 **6.5 Linguistic and notational conventions**

3106 This subclause defines linguistic and notational conventions for textual definitions in profiles.

3107 All words should be in lowercase unless one of the following conditions is met:

- 3108 • The word starts a new sentence, heading, or list item.
- 3109 • The word is a proper noun, such as Ethernet.
- 3110 • The word is an acronym, such as CPU.
- 3111 • The words are part of a profile name (see 5.11.2), such as Profile Registration.
- 3112 • The word is a schema element, such as CIM_SystemDevice.

3113 Phrases should not be concatenated into one word unless one of the following conditions is met:

- 3114 • The word is the name of a named profile element (see 5.18), such as FanStateManagement or
3115 FanCapabilities.
- 3116 • The word is a schema element, such as CIM_SystemDevice, EnabledState, or
3117 RequestStateChange().
- 3118 • The word is an object name, such as MAINCPUFAN.

3119 Elements of the managed environment and elements of the CIM model defined by the profile should be
3120 clearly distinguished. The following rule set is established in order to avoid wrong, unclear, or confusing
3121 text that typically results from mixing elements from the managed environment and elements from the
3122 CIM model defined by a profile.

- 3123 The following rules should be adhered to:
- 3124 • CIM class names or adaptation names should not be used to refer to the object types defined
3125 in the management domain, and vice versa.
 - 3126 • CIM class names or adaptation names should not be used to refer to the managed objects in
3127 the managed environment (that are represented by their instances), and vice versa.
 - 3128 • References to instances of CIM classes or adaptations should contain the word "instance"
3129 unless the instance is clearly identified by an instance name.
 - 3130 • The managed object represented by an instance should be clearly identified, either
3131 immediately such as in "The VirtualSystem instance VSYS4 representing virtual system 4", or
3132 indirectly by a previously established context.
 - 3133 • The value of a property should be distinguished from the property itself.
 - 3134 • Object names should be all uppercase, such as in MAINCPUFAN.

3135 For example, assume the specification of an Example Fan profile that defines a Fan adaptation of the
3136 CIM_Fan class. The Fan adaptation models fans that provide cooling for managed elements within
3137 systems. Furthermore, assume an example situation where a Fan instance named MAINCPUFAN
3138 represents the fan of the main CPU within an example system.

3139 Table 2 juxtaposes examples of recommended phrasing with examples of phrasing that is wrong or
3140 confusing.

3141 **Table 2 – Specification recommendations**

| Recommended | Not recommended (wrong, unclear, or confusing) |
|--|---|
| <p>"The Fan instance MAINCPUFAN represents the CPU fan."</p> <p>NOTE 1 This text defines MAINCPUFAN, such that it can be used in subsequent text. Typically definitions like this refer to a UML object diagram showing the identified instance.</p> <p>NOTE 2 Fan identifies the Fan adaptation, MAINCPUFAN identifies a particular instance, and CPU fan identifies a managed object. Names of named profile elements (such as adaptations) are capitalized, object names should be all uppercase, and all other words are not capitalized unless required by normal English language.</p> | <p>"MAINCPUFAN is the fan of the main CPU."</p> <p>Problem: MAINCPUFAN identifies the Fan instance that <i>represents</i> the main CPU fan. Thus MAINCPUFAN is a CIM representation of the fan, but it <i>is not</i> the fan itself.</p> |
| <p>Preferred: "The value of the EnabledState property in MAINCPUFAN is 2 (Enabled)."</p> <p>Alternative: "The EnabledState value in MAINCPUFAN is 2 (Enabled)."</p> | <p>"MAINCPUFAN is Enabled."</p> <p>Problem: CIM instances are not "Enabled"; instead, CIM instances exhibit property values that reflect the state of the represented object in the managed environment.</p> <p>"The state of the main CPU fan is 2 (Enabled)."</p> <p>Problem: The state of the managed object (the CPU fan) is being confused with the state as viewed through the CIM instance representing the managed object. If the CPU fan is enabled, that is reflected in the Fan instance MAINCPUFAN through the value 2 (Enabled) for the EnabledState property.</p> <p>"The fan state is Enabled."</p> <p>Problem: The state of the managed object is being confused with the textual representation of a property value in the instance representing the managed object.</p> |

| Recommended | Not recommended (wrong, unclear, or confusing) |
|-------------|--|
| | <p>"EnabledState shall match 2." Problem: The property name and the property value are not distinguished.</p> |

3142 **6.6 Backward compatibility**

3143 This subclause defines rules for maintaining backward compatibility between versions of profiles.
 3144 Backward compatibility is a characteristic of profiles enabling clients written against a particular minor
 3145 version of a profile to use the functionality specified by that version in the context of a profile
 3146 implementation of a later minor version of the profile, without requiring modifications of the client.

3147 Backward compatibility relates to the set of minor versions of the profile with the same major version
 3148 number. A specific version of a profile shall be backward compatible to its previous minor versions. For
 3149 example, the version 2.4 of a profile shall be backward compatible to versions 2.0, 2.1, 2.2, and 2.3. A
 3150 new minor version may extend the functionality of previous versions.

3151 A change that breaks backward compatibility is termed incompatibility.

3152 Incompatibilities may be introduced in new major versions.

3153 Incompatibilities shall not be introduced in new minor versions or in new update versions, except for error
 3154 corrections. If incompatibilities are introduced in new minor versions or in new update versions as part of
 3155 error corrections, each incompatibility shall be described from a client perspective, and shall state both
 3156 the version it breaks, and the version introducing the incompatibility.

3157 **6.7 Experimental content**

3158 A profile may designate definitions as experimental. In this case the rules about experimental content as
 3159 defined in the "Document conventions" of this guide for experimental material shall be applied.

3160 A profile that uses experimental schema elements shall designate the definitions that use the
 3161 experimental schema elements as experimental.

3162 **6.8 Deprecation of profile content**

3163 A new minor or update version of a profile may deprecate the definition of profile elements or other profile
 3164 definitions. All deprecated profile definitions shall be continuously documented in new minor or update
 3165 versions of a profile.

3166 For deprecated profile definitions, the rules about deprecated content as defined in the "Document
 3167 conventions" of this guide for deprecated material shall be applied.

3168 Deprecated profile definitions may be removed in new major versions of the profile.

3169 Profiles should not use deprecated profile content (from other profiles) or deprecated schema elements.
 3170 However, minor revisions of profiles that use schema elements that are deprecated in a newer version of
 3171 the schema are not obliged to be upgraded to the new schema version just for the purpose of changing to
 3172 the replacement of the deprecated element.

3173 **6.9 Diagram conventions and guidelines**

3174 **6.9.1 General**

3175 Diagrams are not normative; all normative information shall be provided in text.

3176 Fonts in diagrams should not be more than 10 points, and shall not be less than 6 points.

3177 There are two types of diagrams that are commonly used in profiles, each is based on UML, but with
3178 DMTF-defined extensions and have the advantage of being more intuitive to non-UML readers.

3179 • **DMTF adaptation diagrams** (see 6.9.3) show the structure of a profile or subset thereof. This
3180 structure includes the adaptations of a profile, and their relationships to adaptations or the
3181 classes on which they are based.

3182 • **DMTF object diagrams** (see 6.9.3) (also referred to as instance diagrams) show a set of
3183 related objects (or, more precisely, adaptation instances) at a point in time. Object diagrams
3184 may be associated with use cases, by showing how the use case affects properties and object
3185 relationships.

3186 All adaptations shall be shown in a DMTF adaptation diagram.

3187 Each use case shall utilize one or more DMTF object diagrams to illustrate an example environment.

3188 NOTE 1 Other DMTF defined diagram types have been described in past versions. These have been removed for
3189 simplification.

3190 A specification may include other types of diagrams to illustrate concepts or the profile's use.

3191 6.9.2 Diagram conventions

3192 6.9.2.1 Diagram color conventions

3193 The color conventions as defined in this subclause should be applied to both DMTF and UML formatted
3194 diagrams. Deviations from the color conventions are permitted, but they shall be documented and
3195 consistently applied.

3196 The conventions defined in this subclause are an adapted subset of the conventions outlined in diagrams
3197 that depict schema definitions owned by DMTF.

3198 The following color conventions apply:

3199 • Associations – red line



3200

3201 • Aggregation association – green line with a hollow diamond at the aggregating end



3202

3203 • Composition association – green line with a solid diamond at the aggregating end



3204

3205 • Inheritance relationships – blue line with hollow arrow at the superclass end



3206

3207 In DMTF adaptation diagrams this symbol may also be used to represent the "based on"
3208 relationship between adaptations. In UML object diagrams, inheritance relationships shall not be
3209 shown.

3210 DEPRECATED

- Composition association – green line with a hollow diamond and a dot at the aggregating end



3213 NOTE In OMG UML Superstructure a dot at the endpoint indicates that the endpoint is owned by the
 3214 connected element. However, with CIM associations, an association endpoint is owned by the association
 3215 itself; consequently, the former convention of showing a dot is incorrect, and is replaced by the
 3216 conventions for aggregation and composition associations not showing the dot.

- Inheritance relationships – blue line with solid arrow at the superclass end



3218 NOTE In OMG UML Superstructure a closed arrow at an endpoint of a UML graphic path is defined to
 3219 indicate an UML extension, whereas a hollow arrow is defined to indicate a UML generalization. Because
 3220 CIM inheritance is logically equivalent to the UML concept of generalizations — and not to that of UML
 3221 extensions — a hollow arrow is required at the end connecting to the generalized element, whereas the
 3222 former use of a solid arrow is incorrect.
 3223 A UML extension indicates that the properties of a metaclass are extended through a stereotype to flexibly
 3224 add (and later remove) stereotypes to classes. A UML generalization is a taxonomic relationship between
 3225 a more general classifier and a more specific classifier where each instance of the specific classifier is also
 3226 an indirect instance of the general classifier, and the specific classifier inherits the features of the more
 3227 general classifier.
 3228

3229 DEPRECATED

3230

3231 EXPERIMENTAL**3232 6.9.2.2 Designation of deprecated or experimental elements in diagrams**

3233 Profiles may designate profile elements as experimental (see 6.7), and revisions of profiles may
 3234 deprecate profile elements defined in a previous version (see 6.8).

3235 Profiles may refer to deprecated or experimental schema elements as part of class adaptations (see
 3236 5.19), property requirement (see 5.19.14), or method requirements (see 5.19.11).

3237 In diagrams the depiction of respective deprecated or experimental elements, or of elements that depend
 3238 on deprecated or experimental schema elements, should be designated using the following notational
 3239 conventions:

3240 Deprecated element – suffix the letter D in curly brackets:

3241 {D}

3242 Experimental element – suffix the letter E in curly brackets:

3243 {E}

3244 EXPERIMENTAL

3245 6.9.3 DMTF adaptation diagram

3246 DMTF adaptation diagrams are UML class diagrams (see *OMG UML Superstructure*) with extensions and
3247 restrictions defined in this subclause.

3248 The diagram color conventions defined in 6.9.2 apply.

3249 For DMTF adaptation diagrams the following additional rules and conventions apply:

3250 • A DMTF adaptation diagram represents a single (subject) profile and may represent additional
3251 referenced profiles.

3252 • DMTF adaptation diagrams shall show profiles and class adaptations (adaptations of ordinary
3253 classes, association classes, and indication classes).

3254 • The subject profile within a DMTF adaptation diagram shall be enclosed in a rectangle, labeled
3255 as follows:

```
3256 SPLabel = RegisteredProfileName [ LWS " - " LWS SubsetName ]
```

3257 RegisteredProfileName shall be the registered name of the profile. SubsetName may be used if
3258 the DMTF adaptation diagram shows a subset of adaptations defined by the profile; in this case,
3259 SubsetName should paraphrase the purpose of the shown subset of adaptations.

3260 • If represented in a DMTF adaptation diagram, adaptations of ordinary classes or indication
3261 classes shall be represented as UML classes.. The following format shall be applied, using
3262 italic font:

```
3263 ClassLabel = ["<<" requirement ">>" ] LWS ClassName  
3264 [ LWS "(" [RegisteredProfileName "::"] AdaptationName ")" ]
```

3265 ClassName shall be the name of the adapted class.

3266 The optional requirement specifies the requirement level of the class (see 5.8).

3267 If the adaptation is defined by this profile and unless the name of the adapted class is identical
3268 to the adaptation name prefixed with CIM_, AdaptationName shall be the name of the
3269 adaptation.

3270 Adaptations of ordinary classes or indication classes defined by referenced profiles may be
3271 shown for convenience. If the adaptation is defined in a profile other than the subject profile, the
3272 RegisteredProfileName shall be used with a value of the referencing profile's registered profile
3273 name and the AdaptationName shall be the name of an adaptation in that profile.

3274 • If represented in a DMTF adaptation diagram, adaptations of associations shall be represented
3275 as UML associations, or more specifically as UML aggregations or UML compositions if
3276 respective semantics apply from the schema definition of the adapted association. The
3277 following format shall be applied:

```
3278 AssociationLabel = ["<<" requirement ">>" ] LWS AssociationClassName  
3279 [ LWS "(" [RegisteredProfileName "::"] AdaptationName ")" ]
```

3280 AssociationClassName shall be the name of the adapted association class.

3281 The optional requirement specifies the requirement level of the association (see 5.8).

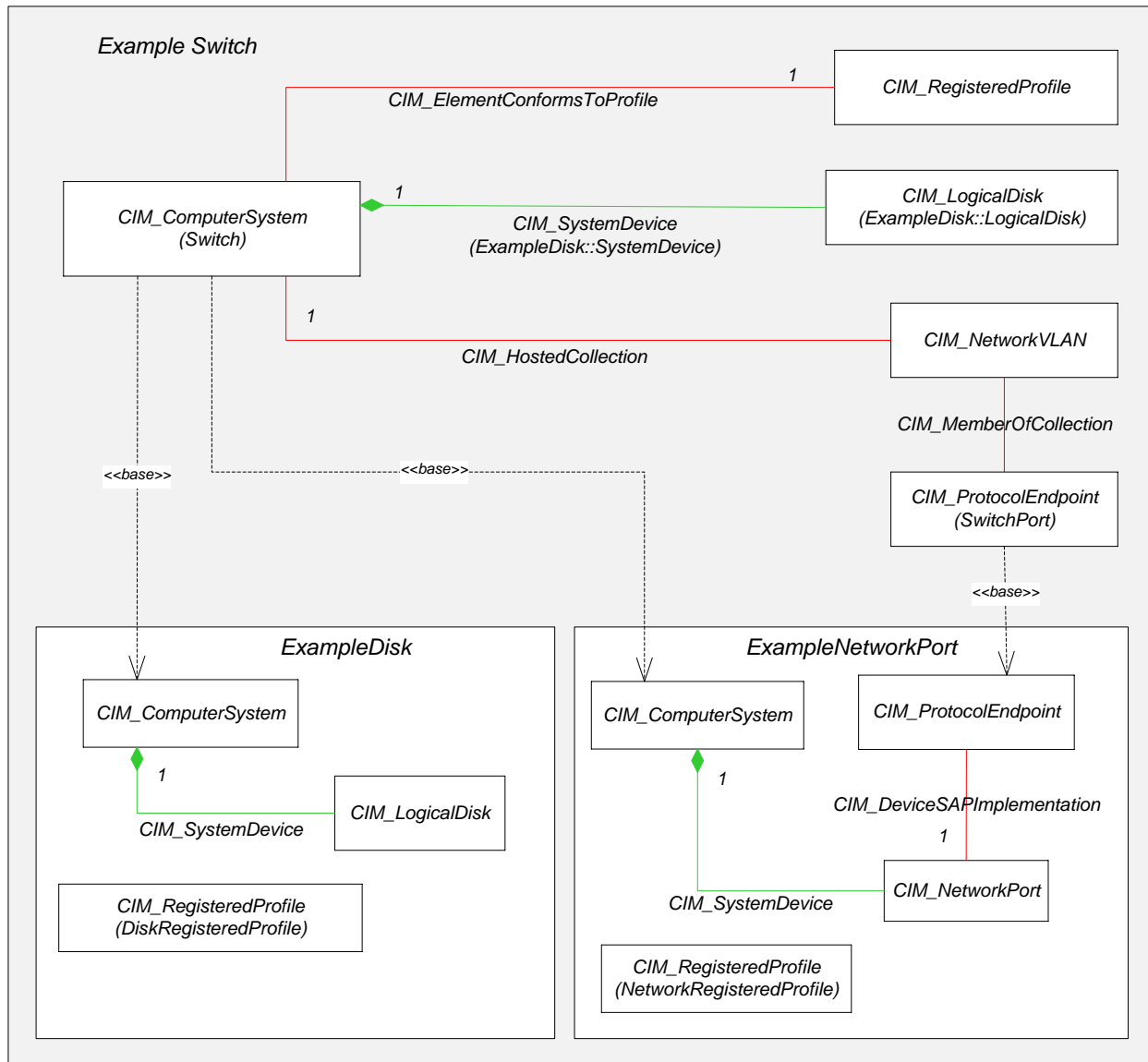
3282 If the adaptation is defined by this profile and unless the name of the adapted association class
3283 is identical to the adaptation name prefixed with CIM_, AdaptationName shall be the name of
3284 the association adaptation.

3285 Adaptations of association classes defined by referenced profiles may be shown for
3286 convenience. If the association adaptation is defined in a profile other than the subject profile,

- 3287 the RegisteredProfileName shall be used with a value of the referenced profile's registered
3288 profile name and the AdaptationName shall be the name of an adaptation in that profile.
- 3289 – Reference properties required by association adaptations may be represented as UML
3290 association ends. If used, UML association ends may be shown as text at the ends of the
3291 UML association representing the association adaptation.
 - 3292 – Reference multiplicities shall be represented as UML association end multiplicities if
3293 deviating from the default "*" (zero to many). The default multiplicity "*" may be
3294 represented by UML association end multiplicities.
- 3295 • A diagram may contain additional rectangles representing referenced profiles.
 - 3296 • Each referenced profile within a DMTF adaptation diagram shall be enclosed in a rectangle
3297 labeled as follows:
3298

```
RPLabel = ReferencedProfileName [ LWS " - " LWS SubsetName ]
```
 - 3299 ReferencedProfileName shall be the reference name of the profile as defined by the referencing
3300 profile. SubsetName may be used if the DMTF adaptation diagram shows a subset of
3301 adaptations defined by the profile; in this case, SubsetName should paraphrase the purpose of
3302 the shown subset of adaptations.
 - 3303 • Each referenced profile may be
 - 3304 – Embedded into the rectangle of the referencing profile. This represents a profile usage of
3305 the referenced profile.
 - 3306 – Shown as a separate box outside of the box for the referencing profile. In that case, the
3307 relationship between the referencing profile box and the referenced profile box shall be
3308 shown as a dashed line (e.g., a UML dependency) with an arrowhead on the side of the
3309 referenced profile. This line shall be labeled as follows:
3310

```
PRLabel = "<<" [requirement ","] ("base" / "use" )">>"
```
 - 3311 Where `use` specifies a profile usage relationship, `base` specifies a profile derivation
3312 relationship, and the optional requirement specifies the requirement level of the profile
3313 reference (see 5.8).
 - 3314 • The relationship between an adaptation of a referencing profile to its base adaptation defined
3315 by a referenced profile may be shown as a dashed line (e.g., a UML dependency) with an
3316 arrowhead on the side of the base adaptation. This line is labeled with `<<base>>`.
 - 3317 • In general, any adaptation defined by a profile should be depicted at most once in a DMTF
3318 adaptation diagram. The desire for depicting a particular adaptation more than once should be
3319 taken as an indicator that the definition of a separate adaptation is appropriate.
 - 3320 • DMTF adaptation diagrams should not show properties and methods.



3321

3322

Figure 10 – Examples of DMTF adaptation diagrams

3323 Figure 10 shows examples of DMTF adaptation diagrams from one autonomous profile and two
 3324 component profiles. Several items to note:

- 3325 1) ExampleDisk and ExampleNetworkPort are labeled according to the profile reference names
 3326 defined in Example Switch.
- 3327 2) CIM_RegisteredProfile will be defined by the RegisteredProfile adaptation of Example Switch.
- 3328 3) CIM_LogicalDisk and CIM_SystemDevice are not defined by adaptations of Example Switch.
 3329 They are shown for the convenience of the reader, but are already fully defined by ExampleDisk
 3330 and are logically part of Example Switch as a consequence of the profile usage relationship.
- 3331 4) The SwitchPort adaptation is based on the ProtocolEndpoint adaptation of
 3332 ExampleNetworkPort.

- 3333 5) The Switch adaptation is based on ComputerSystem adaptations of both ExampleDisk and
- 3334 ExampleNetworkPort.
- 3335 6) This diagram does not provide information about adaptation relationships to uses of the profile
- 3336 registration profile. The reader must refer to the profiles specification to learn that detail.

3337 **6.9.4 DMTF object diagram**

3338 UML object diagrams, also referred to as instance diagrams, (see *OMG UML Superstructure*) that are

3339 conformant to this specification shall satisfy the additional requirements defined in this subclause.

3340 UML object diagrams depict example instantiations and should illustrate best practice implementations.

3341 Each DMTF/UML object diagram shall have a label formatted as follows:

3342 `DiagramName = RegisteredProfileName [LWS "-" LWS ExampleName]`

3343 where:

- 3344 • `RegisteredProfileName` shall be the registered profile name.
- 3345 • `ExampleName` provides a short name for use within profile text to identify the purpose of this
- 3346 diagram.

3347 Instances and links shown shall be instances of adaptations defined by specifying profile.

3348 NOTE This requires that adaptations defined by referenced profiles must be specified as base adaptations of

3349 adaptations in the specifying profile even if such referenced adaptations are not otherwise constrained by the

3350 referencing profile

3351 UML object diagrams may be associated with use cases — showing how adaptation instances,

3352 particularly their property values and their relationships, are visible to clients in the process of performing

3353 a sequence of activities as described by a use case.

3354 The labels of adaptation instances shall be underlined and specified using the format (in ABNF):

3355 `InstanceLabel = [[InstanceName] *("/" AdaptationName)] ":" ClassName /`

3356 `[InstanceName] +("/" AdaptationName)`

3357 `InstanceName = IDENTIFIER ; See IDENTIFIER in Annex A of DSP0004.`

3358 where:

- 3359 • `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the ordinary or indication class adaptation.
- 3360 • `InstanceName` should be used to refer to the instance from any text describing the diagram; it
- 3361 may be omitted if the resulting label is not ambiguous within the diagram.
- 3362 • `ClassName` is the class name of the represented instance.

3363 • Examples:

3364 `System1 / System ; InstanceName/AdaptationName`

3365 `SYS_2:CIM_ComputerSystem ; InstanceName:ClassName`

3366 `Boston/Cluster:CIM_AdminDomain ; all three components`

3367 `/VirtualSystem ; /AdaptationName`

3368 `: CIM_ComputerSystem ; :ClassName`

3369 Instances of abstract classes shall not be shown in DMTF object diagrams. If a variety of concrete

3370 subclasses are applicable in a particular case, a concrete subclass shall be selected and explanatory text

3371 be provided with the diagram stating that the other concrete classes are applicable as well.

3372 Instances shall be represented with a box that exhibits one or two horizontal compartments. The top
3373 compartment shall contain the instance label as defined for the `InstanceLabel` ABNF rule. If present,
3374 the bottom compartment may contain applicable properties that are needed to be illustrative, including
3375 properties that are defined in the schema definition of adapted classes but are not referenced by the
3376 subject profile or a referenced profile.

3377 For each applicable property, the property name and its value shall be listed using the format (in ABNF):

```
3378 PropertyEntry = PropertyName *WS PropertyAssignment *WS PropertyValue
```

```
3379 PropertyName = IDENTIFIER
```

```
3380 PropertyValue = initializer
```

```
3381 PropertyAssignment = "="
```

3382 Methods should not be shown in DMTF object diagrams.

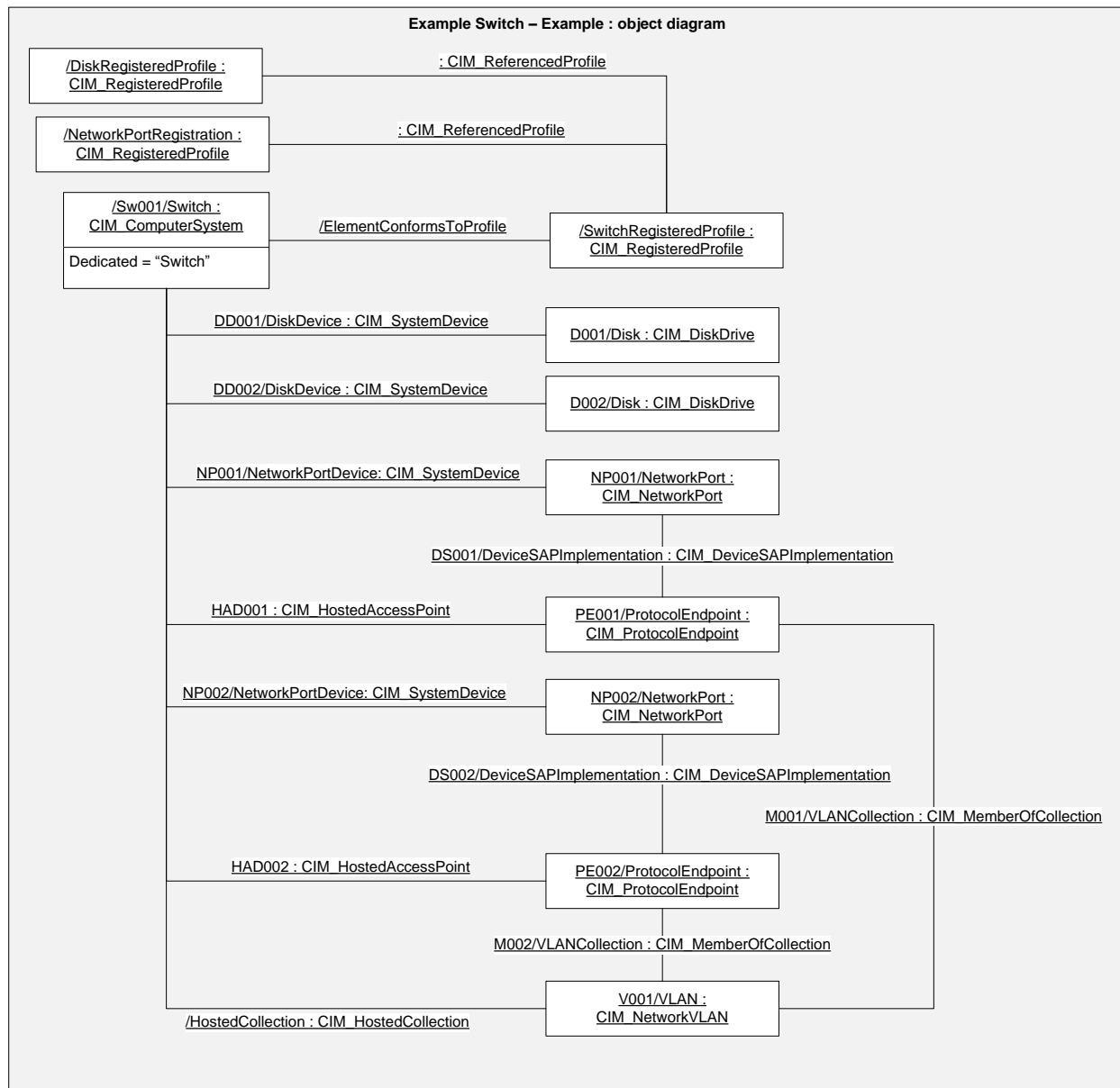
3383 If UFIT values are included in the object diagram, they should conform to [DSP0215](#).

3384 DMTF object diagrams shall be accompanied by descriptive text that explains the diagram and its
3385 pertinence.

3386 Associations shall be depicted as UML links. Associations with properties other than reference properties
3387 may be depicted as a separate UML object that contains the properties and is connected to the
3388 association link with a dashed line.

3389 Figure 11 is an example object diagram.

3390



3391

3392

Figure 11 – Example Switch UML object diagram

3393 **6.10 Requirement level specification conventions**

3394 In profile specifications, requirement levels (see 5.8) are stated using keywords as defined in this
 3395 subclause.

- 3396 • The derivation requirement level (see 5.8.2) shall be stated using the keyword "derivation".
- 3397 • The mandatory requirement level (see 5.8.3) shall be stated using the keyword "mandatory".
- 3398 • The conditional requirement level (see 5.8.5) shall be stated using the keyword "conditional"; in
 3399 addition, the requirements described in 6.12 for the specification of the condition apply.
- 3400 • The conditional exclusive requirement level (see 5.8.6) shall be stated using the keyword
 3401 "conditional exclusive"; in addition, the requirements described in 6.12 for the specification of

3402 the condition apply.

- 3403 • The optional requirement level (see 5.8.4) shall be stated using the keyword "optional".
- 3404 • The prohibited requirement level (see 5.8.7) shall be stated using the keyword "prohibited".

3405 **6.11 Implementation type specification conventions**

3406 In profile specifications, the implementation types (defined for adaptations, see 5.19.8) are stated using
3407 keywords as defined in this subclause.

- 3408 • The "instantiated" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "instantiated".
- 3409 • The "embedded" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "embedded".
- 3410 • The "abstract" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "abstract".
- 3411 • The "indication" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "indication".
- 3412 • The "exception" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "exception".

3413 **6.12 Conditional element specification conventions**

3414 This subclause defines requirements for the specification of conditional elements in profile specifications.

3415 **6.12.1 General**

3416 Conditions shall be defined using one of the mechanisms defined in 5.9.

3417 **6.12.2 Specification of conditional elements outside of tables**

3418 In any text outside of tables the fact that an element is defined as conditional shall be phrased as follows,

```
3419 ConditionalPhrase = "The implementation of the " ElementName " " ElementType " is "  
3420 ConditionalFlavor "."
```

```
3421 ElementName = PROFILE_IDENTIFIER / IDENTIFIER ; shall identify the conditional element
```

```
3422 ElementType = "profile" / "feature" / "adaptation" / "property" / "method" /  
3423 "parameter"
```

```
3424 ConditionalFlavor = "conditional" / "conditional exclusive"
```

3425 In cases where it is not possible to apply this phraseology, alternatively a condition and its consequence
3426 may be stated as a conditional sentence in the English language.

3427 The text defining the condition shall be phrased in the format of a ConditionStatement as detailed below:

```
3428 ConditionStatement = "Condition:" *WS ConditionSpecification
```

3429 ConditionSpecification shall be an appropriate textual representation of the basic types of
3430 conditions and their combination using Boolean operators, as specified in 5.9.

3431 Examples:

- 3432 • "Condition: The Fan adaptation is implemented".
- 3433 • "Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented."
- 3434 • "Condition: The managed environment contains fans with simple sensors, or the managed
3435 environment contains fans with numeric sensors."
- 3436 • "Condition: Any of the following:
 - 3437 – The managed environment contains fans with simple sensors.

- 3438 – The managed environment contains fans with numeric sensors."

3439 6.12.3 Specification of conditional elements within tables

3440 Within tables, a conditional element shall be designated with the word "Conditional" (without additional
3441 text) within the table column indicating the requirement level, as follows:

3442 `ConditionInTable = "Conditional" / "Conditional exclusive"`

3443 The condition shall be specified in a corresponding cell within the Description column of the same table. If
3444 the text in the Description cell would exceed a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words), it shall be
3445 replaced by a reference to a separate subclause that defines the condition, following the conventions
3446 defined in 6.12.2.

3447 An example of the specification of a condition within a table is given in Table X-1.

3448 6.13 Value constraint specification conventions

3449 As defined in 5.19.15, a profile may constrain property values or method parameter values to a single
3450 value or a set of values. Also, for string-typed properties, methods and parameters, profiles may specify a
3451 mechanism that conveys the format used for their values.

3452 In profile specifications, value constraints may be expressed in the form of ABNF, or in the form of a
3453 regular expression. This subclause details conventions to be applied if regular expressions are used.

3454 Table 3 provides examples of applications of the provisions in this subclause.

3455 If in a profile specification a format specification is stated in the form of a regular expression, it shall be
3456 preceded by an equivalent format definition stated in the form of normative text. The regular expression-
3457 based format definition shall follow, encompassed by brackets. Within the brackets the keyword "pattern"
3458 shall be used to identify the regular expression, followed by the regular expression as a quoted string and
3459 compliant with the regular expression syntax defined in ANNEX B. For an example, see
3460 PermanentAddress in Table 3.

3461 NOTE Regular expressions can be used in code that validates formats. Textual descriptions provide equivalent
3462 information suitable for human readers.

3463 Within tables, the name of the property or parameter is listed under a separate column, and the value
3464 constraint shall be expressed within the corresponding cell of the Description column in the form of a
3465 normative statement, as follows:

- 3466 • If the value set for a string property or parameter is constrained to just one value, that value
3467 shall be stated and a regular expression pattern should not be specified. For an example, see
3468 OtherPortType in Table 3.
- 3469 • For the specification of the value set of properties or parameters without a Values qualifier, a
3470 requirement for exactly one valid value shall be specified as follows: "Value shall be" or "Value
3471 shall match", followed by the value. For an example, see PortNumber in Table 3.
- 3472 • For the specification of the value set of properties or parameters without a Values qualifier, a
3473 requirement for a list of valid values shall be specified as follows: "Value shall match", followed
3474 by a list of values separated by vertical bars. For an example, see
3475 SupportedMaximumTransmissionUnit in Table 3.
- 3476 • For the specification of the value set of properties or parameters with a Values qualifier, a
3477 single valid value shall be specified as "Value shall be" or "Value shall match", followed by the
3478 element from the ValueMap value set and followed by the parenthesized corresponding
3479 (textual) element of the Values value set. For an example, see PortType in Table 3.
- 3480 • For the specification of the value set of a properties or parameters with a Values qualifier, a list

3481 of valid values shall be specified as "Value shall match", followed by a list of elements from the
3482 ValueMap value set separated by vertical bars and followed by a parenthesized list of
3483 corresponding elements from the Values value set separated by "or". For an example, see
3484 LinkTechnology in Table 3.

3485 NOTE The lists of values from the ValueMap value set and from the Values value set are specified separately. This
3486 allows the ValueMap value list to be a valid regular expression, enabling automatic generation of profile specification
3487 tables from a separate source (such as XML) that can also be used for testing. If elements from the ValueMap value
3488 set and the Values value set were mixed (for example, "ProtocolType matches 4096 (IP v4) | 4097 (IP v6), | 4098
3489 (both)"), the result is not a valid regular expression.

3490 Outside of tables, value constraints shall be expressed in the form of normative sentences, for example:

3491 "The value of the BlockSize property shall convey the formatted block or sector size, and shall
3492 always be 512."

3493 The examples listed above for the definition of value constraints within tables apply correspondingly, for
3494 example replacing the phrase "Value shall ..." with the phrase "The value of the xxx property shall ...".

3495 Some CIM classes define a separate property for the specification of valid formats of the value of another
3496 property. The second adaptation example in Table 3 shows a format definition for the Name property in a
3497 StorageVolume adaptation of the CIM_StorageVolume class with valid formats conveyed through the
3498 value of the NameFormat property.

3499

Table 3 – Example of string property format definition

| X-7 Implementation | | |
|--|-------------|--|
| ... | | |
| X-7.4 Adaptation: VirtualNetworkPort: CIM_NetworkPort | | |
| This subclause defines the adaptation of the CIM_NetworkPort class for the representation of network ports in virtual systems. | | |
| X-7.4.1 Implementation requirements | | |
| Table X-11 lists the implementation requirements for the VirtualNetworkPort adaptation. | | |
| Table X-11 – Adaptation: VirtualNetworkPort: CIM_NetworkPort | | |
| Element | Requirement | Description |
| ... | ... | ... |
| UsageRestriction | Mandatory | Value shall be 2 (Front-end-only) |
| PortType | Mandatory | Value shall be 1 (Other) |
| OtherPortType | Mandatory | Value shall be "Dynamic port" |
| PortNumber | Mandatory | Value shall be 0 |
| LinkTechnology | Mandatory | Value shall match 2 3 5 (Ethernet or IB or FDDI) |
| PermanentAddress | Mandatory | Value shall be formatted as 16 consecutive uppercase hexadecimal digits (pattern "[0123456789ABCDEF]{16}\$") |
| SupportedMaximumTransmissionUnit | Mandatory | Value shall be 1526 4096 |
| ... | ... | ... |
| ... | | |
| X-7.6 Adaptation: StorageVolume: CIM_StorageVolume | | |
| X-7.6.1 Implementation requirements | | |
| Table X-12 lists the implementation requirements for the StorageVolume adaptation. | | |
| Table X-12 – Adaptation: StorageVolume: CIM_StorageVolume | | |
| Element | Requirement | Description |
| ... | ... | ... |
| Name | Mandatory | See X-7.6.2. |
| NameFormat | Mandatory | Value shall be 7 8 9 (SNVM or NodeWWN or NAA) |
| ... | ... | ... |
| ... | | |

X-7.6.2 Property: Name

Valid formats of the Name property are constrained by the value of the NameFormat property, as follows:

If the value of the NameFormat property is 7 (SNVM), the value of the Name property shall convey the vendor name, product name and serial number of the storage volume as three strings separated by "+" characters. The vendor name shall have exactly 8 characters and the product name shall have exactly 16 characters. Both names may contain blanks as significant characters and if necessary shall be padded with blanks to match the required length. The serial number shall be formatted using uppercase hexadecimal digits (pattern "[A-Za-z]{8}\+[A-Za-z]{16}\+[0123456789ABCDEF]*\$").

If the value of the NameFormat property is 9 (NAA), the value of the Name property shall convey the system's hardware ID as specified in T10 SPC and shall be formatted as 16 consecutive uppercase hex digits (pattern "[0123456789ABCDEF]{16}\$").

If the value of the NameFormat property is 8 (NodeWWN), the value of the Name property shall convey the system's Fibre Channel WWN and shall be formatted as 8 consecutive uppercase hex digits (pattern "[0123456789ABCDEF]{8}\$").

...

3500 6.13.1 Conventions for the specifications of default property values

3501 If a profile defines a default value for a property (see 5.19.15.2), that shall be specified using the following
3502 format:

```
3503 PropertyDefaultValuePhrase = "Default value is " value "."
```

3504 6.13.2 Conventions for the specification of reference multiplicities

3505 The specification of references in association adaptations shall include text specifying the multiplicity of
3506 the reference if the schema defined multiplicity is further constrained by the profile; see 5.19.14.

3507 The format is

```
3508 MultiplicitySpecification = "Multiplicity: " MultiplicityValue
```

3509 DEPRECATED

3510 Minor revisions of profiles initially specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue
3511 using the word "cardinality" in place of "multiplicity".

3512 DEPRECATED

3513 MultiplicityValue shall specify the multiplicity, as follows:

3514 "1" indicates that exactly one instance is referenced.

3515 "*" indicates that 0 or more instances are referenced.

3516 "m..n" indicates that m to n instances are referenced, where m is 0 or a positive integer and n is
3517 a positive integer or "*" (representing unlimited).

3518 If no multiplicity is specified in the profile, the multiplicity defined in the schema definition of the reference
3519 applies; this may be emphasized by explicitly stating "Reference multiplicity conforms to the schema
3520 definition".

3521 Note that multiplicities of references are specified in the context of a class adaptation, and that
3522 multiplicities of references in different adaptations of the same association may be different.

3523 **6.14 Profile specification structures**

3524 **6.14.1 General**

3525 This guide defines a choice of two structures for profile specifications: The condensed structure and the
3526 traditional structure.

3527 The condensed profile specification structure should be favored for new profile specifications that are
3528 originally created in conformance to this guide.

3529 Revisions of existing profiles may continue to use the traditional structure, and they may apply a mixture
3530 of both structures with respect to the definition of indications.

3531 NOTE The last rule was established to enable revisions of existing profiles to conform to provisions defined by this
3532 guide with respect to the definition of indication requirements, without requiring these revisions to conform to other
3533 provisions of this guide.

3534 **6.14.2 Condensed profile specification structure**

3535 The condensed profile specification structure provides for a comprehensive definition of class adaptations
3536 as part of the "Implementation" clause; thus, it condenses information into the "Implementation" clause
3537 that with version 1.0 of this guide was spread over the "CIM elements" clause, the "Methods" clause, and
3538 the "Implementation" clause.

3539 In the condensed profile specification structure, the location for the table listing all class adaptations
3540 defined by a profile is in the "Synopsis" clause. This enables a straightforward definition of class
3541 adaptations with a direct entry path through the "Synopsis" clause that provides the overview information
3542 and tables with forward references to subclauses of the "Implementation" clause that provide detailed
3543 implementation information for each adaptation.

3544 **DEPRECATED**

3545 **6.14.3 Traditional profile specification structure**

3546 **6.14.3.1 General**

3547 Minor revisions of profiles initially specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue
3548 using the traditional profile specification structure as defined in this subclause.

3549 The traditional profile specification structure originally defined in version 1.0 of this guide spreads the
3550 entry information to a profile over the "Synopsis" clause and the "CIM Elements" clause. The "CIM
3551 Elements" clause typically contains back references to subclauses of the "Implementation" and "Methods"
3552 clauses that provide detail information.

3553 With version 1.1 of this guide the traditional structure was established to allow for revisions of existing
3554 profile specifications originally created in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide to remain compliant
3555 to this guide without structural changes.

3556 Revisions of existing profiles may continue to use the traditional structure, and may apply a mixture of
3557 both structures with respect to the definition of indications.

3558 **6.14.3.2 Specific requirements for DMTF Profile class diagrams in traditional profile** 3559 **specifications**

3560 Each profile specification in profile specifications applying the traditional profile structure shall contain one
3561 DMTF profile class diagram that depicts the central elements of the management interface defined by the

3562 subject profile by showing profiled classes and associations defined by the subject profile or by a
3563 referenced profile (see 5.14). That DMTF profile class diagram shall have a label formatted as follows:

3564 `DiagramLabel = ProfileName ": Profile class diagram"`

3565 The schema prefix (for example, "CIM_") shall be omitted from names of classes defined in a DMTF-
3566 maintained CIM schema. Prefixes should be shown if the profile defines "profile classes" that are not
3567 defined in a DMTF-maintained CIM schema.

3568 Profile classes defined by the subject profile shall be represented with a box that exhibits two horizontal
3569 compartments.

3570 The top compartment shall contain the "profile class" name, including the case where the name is in the
3571 deprecated format using a class name and an optional modifier.

3572 If a subject profile refers to a class adaptation defined in a referenced profile, the lower compartment shall
3573 contain the string:

3574 `Reference = "(See " ProfileDesignator ")"`

3575 `ProfileDesignator = ScopingProfileDesignator /`

3576 `ReferencingProfileDesignator / SpecificProfileDesignator`

3577 `ScopingProfileDesignator = "scoping profile"`

3578 `ReferencingProfileDesignator = "referencing profile"`

3579 `SpecificProfileDesignator = RegisteredProfileName [" profile"]`

3580 `RegisteredProfileName` is the registered profile name of the referenced profile.

3581 The depiction of "profile classes" shall not include properties or methods. Inheritance should only be
3582 shown if the profile adapts a class and its superclass.

3583 NOTE Eliminating properties and methods eliminates the risk that these elements are specified differently in the
3584 diagram and the text format included in profile specifications.

3585 The depiction of an association shall be labeled with the association adaptation name. If the adaptation of
3586 an association is defined by a referenced profile, the label for that association shall contain a reference to
3587 the referenced profile, using the format defined by the Reference ABNF rule.

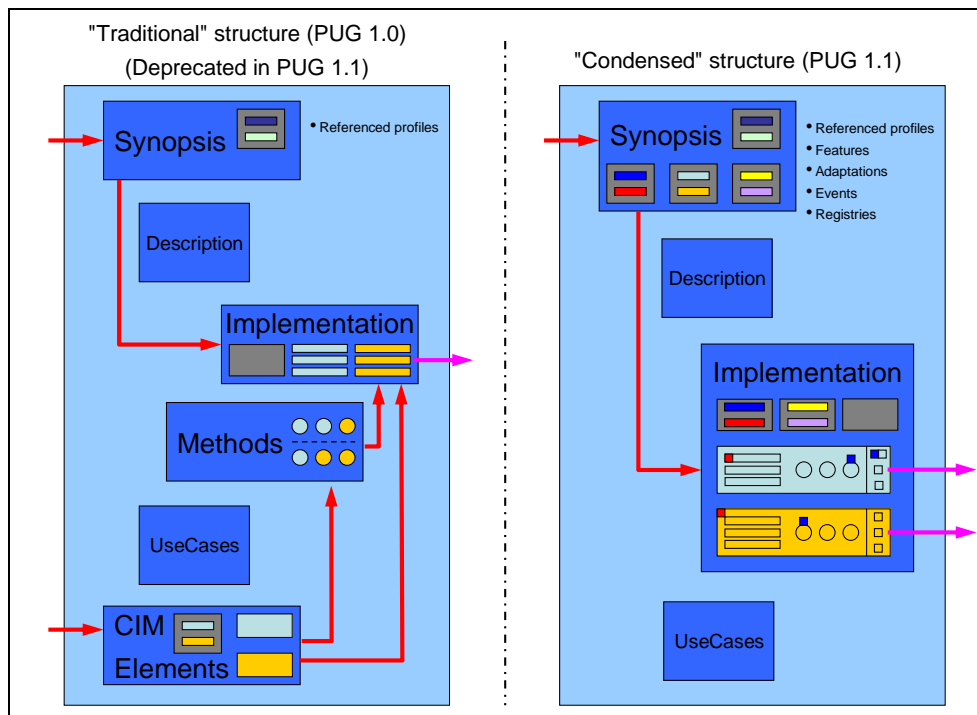
3588 If a profile defines multiple adaptations of the same adapted class for multiple purposes, then each
3589 adaptation should be shown separately.

3590 The depiction of association adaptations shall show multiplicities. Note that these multiplicities, which are
3591 the multiplicities exposed by the association adaptation, can be constrained beyond those defined for the
3592 adapted association in the schema. For example, if a profile in an association adaptation requires a
3593 multiplicity of 1-n, but the schema defined multiplicity is 0-n, then the multiplicity shown in the class
3594 diagram shall reflect the narrowed multiplicity required by the association adaptation.

3595 **DEPRECATED**

3596 **6.14.4 Usage of profile specification structures**

3597 The two profile specification structures are depicted in Figure 12.



3598

3599 **Figure 12 – Traditional and condensed profile structures**

3600 On the left side of Figure 12, the major clauses are shown with the traditional profile specification
 3601 structure applied. Note the two entry paths into the profile, one following through the "Synopsis" clause,
 3602 and the other one following through the "CIM elements" clause.

3603 On the right side of Figure 12, the major clauses are shown with the condensed profile structure applied.
 3604 Note that there is only one entry path into the profile, and that adaptations are comprehensively organized
 3605 within the "Implementation" clause, with all pertinent information required for the implementation of a
 3606 particular adaptation presented within one subclause. The blue and red colored squares indicate that the
 3607 implementation of some elements is required only as the "blue" or the "red" features are implemented.

3608 **6.15 Requirements for profile specification clauses**

3609 **6.15.1 General**

3610 The requirements for profile specification clauses differ with the structure chosen for the subject profile;
 3611 see 6.14. Table 4 lists the profile specification clauses in the order they shall appear in profile
 3612 specifications, along with references to subclauses of this guide or documents referenced by this guide
 3613 that detail the requirements for the specification of respective clauses in profile specifications.

3614

Table 4 – Requirements for profile specification clauses

| Clause name | Condensed structure | Traditional structure |
|-------------------------------|--|------------------------|
| Scope | Required, see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 6.2.1. | |
| Normative references | Required, see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 6.2.2. | |
| Terms and definitions | Required, see 6.15.3 and ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 6.3.1. | |
| Symbols and abbreviated terms | Required, see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 6.3.2. | |
| Conformance | Optional, see 6.15.4. | |
| Synopsis | Required, see 6.15.3. Requirements differ based on the chosen structure. | |
| Description | Required, see 6.15.6. | |
| Implementation | Required, see 6.15.7. Requirements differ based on the chosen structure. | |
| Methods | Prohibited, content covered in "Implementation" clause; see 6.15.7. | Required, see 6.15.8. |
| Use cases | Required, see 6.15.9. | |
| CIM elements | Prohibited, content covered in "Implementation" clause; see 6.15.7. | Required, see 6.15.10. |

3615 Spelling of clause names and subclause names shall follow normal English grammar rules. Arbitrary
 3616 capitalization of words should be avoided.

3617 **6.15.2 Requirements for the numbering of profile specification clauses and subclauses**

3618 ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 requires clauses and subclauses to be numbered.

3619 An organization may opt to "demote" the clauses to subclauses at a lower heading level. For example,
 3620 clause "6 Synopsis" may become subclause "8.6 Synopsis" or "8.2.6 Synopsis" within a larger
 3621 aggregating document. However, the relative heading numbering shall be maintained at respective lower
 3622 levels (that is, all headings are demoted by the same number of heading levels), and all clauses starting
 3623 with the "Synopsis" clause shall be provided. This allows embedding profile specifications in a larger
 3624 document while preserving a recognizable profile specification format for readers.

3625 **6.15.3 Requirements for the specification of the "Terms and definitions" clause**

3626 Each profile specification shall have a "Terms and definitions" clause.

3627 The "Terms and definitions" clause shall be specified as defined in ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, 6.3.1 and
 3628 Appendix D.

3629 NOTE ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 and other ISO documents establish rigid rules with respect to the capitalization of
 3630 terms. Generally, terms are required to be in lowercase unless otherwise required by English grammar rules.

3631 The "Terms and definitions" clause shall contain the text stated in Table 5 immediately after the heading.

3632 **Table 5 – Common text for the "Terms and definitions" clause of profile specifications**

The terms "shall" ("required"), "shall not", "should" ("recommended"), "should not" ("not recommended"), "may", "need not" ("not required"), "can" and "cannot" in this document are to be interpreted as described in ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, Annex H. The terms in parenthesis are alternatives for the preceding term, for use in exceptional cases when the preceding term cannot be used for linguistic reasons. Note that ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, Annex H specifies additional alternatives. Occurrences of such additional alternatives shall be interpreted in their normal English meaning.

The terms "clause", "subclause", "paragraph", and "annex" in this document are to be interpreted as described in ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, Clause 5.

The terms "normative" and "informative" in this document are to be interpreted as described in ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, Clause 3. In this guide, clauses, subclauses or annexes indicated with "(informative)" as well as notes and examples do not contain normative content.

The terms defined in [DSP0004](#), [DSP0223](#) and [DSP1001](#) apply to this profile.

3633 **6.15.4 Requirements for the specification of the "Conformance" clause**

3634 The specification of a conformance clause is optional.

3635 Generally, the conformance definitions defined by this guide apply.

3636 Profiles may specify additional conformance rules for implementations beyond those required in 7.2; this
3637 guide does not define rules on how to define such conformance rules in profiles.3638 **6.15.5 Requirements for the specification of the "Synopsis" clause**

3639 This subclause defines requirements for the "Synopsis" clause in profile specifications.

3640 **6.15.5.1 General**

3641 Each profile specification shall have a "Synopsis" clause.

3642 The "Synopsis" clause of a profile specification shall conform to the rules defined in subclauses 6.15.5.3
3643 to 6.15.5.7.

3644 Requirements for the sequence of definitions in the "Synopsis" clause

3645 The definitions in the "Synopsis" clause shall be in the following sequence:

- 3646 • The profile attributes, as defined in 6.15.5.3
- 3647 • The summary, as defined in 6.15.5.4
- 3648 • The table of profile references, as defined in 6.15.5.5
- 3649 • The tables of registry references, as defined in 6.15.5.6
- 3650 • The table of features, as defined in 6.15.5.7
- 3651 • The table of adaptations, as defined in 6.15.5.8
- 3652 • The table of use cases, as defined in 6.15.5.9

3653 Some of these definitions are only required if the corresponding elements are defined in the profile, and
3654 some are placed elsewhere when the traditional structure is used by the profile specification; this is
3655 detailed in the referenced subclauses.

3656 **6.15.5.2 Requirement for separate subclauses within the "Synopsis" clause**

3657 NOTE ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 requires that no normative text be put at the beginning of a clause if that clause
 3658 contains subclauses (to avoid "hanging" paragraphs); this is the reason for requiring separate subclauses in the case
 3659 that any subclause is defined within the "Synopsis" clause. Such subclauses might be required, for example, because
 3660 table cell space requirements are exceeded in tables required by other subclauses of 6.15.5, or because the
 3661 definition of the scoping algorithm requires a separate subclause.

3662 Consequently, if any of the definitions within the "Synopsis" clause of a profile specification requires a
 3663 separate subclause, each of the definitions listed above needs to be put in a separate subclause within
 3664 the Synopsis clause.

3665 **6.15.5.3 Requirements for the specification of profile attributes**

3666 **6.15.5.3.1 General**

3667 If the profile attributes are specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 6.15.5.2),
 3668 that subclause shall be named "Profile attributes".

3669 Profile attributes shall be listed as a sequence of attribute statements. This sequence of statements
 3670 should be placed first in the "Synopsis" clause.

3671 The sequence of attribute statements and their format in ABNF is defined by the "Attribute statement"
 3672 column of Table 6; corresponding values in the "Requirements" column refer to subclauses of clause 7
 3673 that provide details about the respective profile attributes. In a profile specification the sequence of
 3674 attribute statements should not be formatted as a table, but as a contiguous sequence of attribute value
 3675 statements that are in the sequence and format detailed in Table 6.

3676 **Table 6 – Requirements for the specification of profile attributes**

| Attribute statement (ABNF) | Requirement |
|--|---------------------------------|
| "Profile name:" *WS RegisteredProfileName RegisteredProfileName shall be the registered profile name; see 5.11.2. | Required. |
| "Version:":* WS RegisteredProfileVersion RegisteredProfileVersion shall be the registered profile version; see 5.11.3. | Required. |
| "Organization:" *WS RegisteredOrganizationName RegisteredOrganizationName shall be the registered organization name; see 5.11.4. | Required. |
| "Abstract indicator:" *WS AbstractProfileIndicator AbstractProfileIndicator shall be "True" for abstract profiles (see 5.15.1), and "False" otherwise. Default: "False". | Required for abstract profiles. |
| "Profile type:" *WS ProfileType ProfileType shall be "autonomous" for autonomous profiles (see 5.13.2), "component" for component profiles (see 5.13.3), and "pattern" for pattern profiles (see 5.13.4). | Required. |

| Attribute statement (ABNF) | Requirement |
|---|---|
| <p>"Schema name:" *WS SchemaName SchemaName shall be the schema name; see 5.12.3. Default: "CIM".</p> | <p>Optional.</p> |
| <p>"Schema version:" *WS SchemaVersion SchemaVersion shall be the schema version; see 5.12.2. For experimental schemas, the value should be suffixed with "(Experimental)".</p> | <p>Required unless "Schema:" is used.</p> |
| <p>"Schema organization:" *WS SchemaOrganization SchemaOrganization shall be the schema organization; see 5.12.4. Default: "DMTF".</p> | <p>Optional.</p> |
| <p>"Schema:" *WS [SchemaOrganization WS] SchemaName WS SchemaVersion SchemaOrganization, SchemaName and SchemaVersion shall be set as defined above in this table. Alternative to the specification of the triplet "Schema name", "Schema version", and "Schema organization" that should be preferred if multiple schemas are referenced.</p> | <p>Optional.</p> |
| <p>"Central class adaptation:" *WS CentralClassAdaptationName CentralClassAdaptationName shall be the name of the central class adaptation; see 5.14.4.2.</p> | <p>Required.</p> |
| <p>"Scoping class adaptation:" *WS ScopingClassAdaptationName ScopingClassAdaptationName shall be the name of the scoping class adaptation; see 5.14.4.4.</p> | <p>Required for component profiles.</p> |
| <p>"Scoping algorithm:" *WS ScopingPath For ScopingPath, see 6.15.5.3.2.</p> | <p>Required for component profiles.</p> |
| <p>NOTE Profile attributes shall be listed in normal text font, with the profile attribute names (the initial literal up to and including the colon) highlighted in bold font; see also the example in A.2.</p> | |

3677 **6.15.5.3.2 Scoping path**

3678 ScopingPath shall be the scoping path; see 5.14.4.5. It shall be specified as follows:

- 3679 • If the scoping path between central class adaptation and scoping class adaptation is composed
- 3680 of only one association adaptation, ScopingPath shall be the name of the association
- 3681 adaptation.

- 3682 • Otherwise, the definition of the scoping path shall be placed in a separate subclause of the
- 3683 "Synopsis" clause, immediately after the "Profile attributes" subclause, and be named "Scoping
- 3684 path". In this case, ScopingPath shall have the form "See " SubclauseNumber, where
- 3685 SubclauseNumber is the number of the scoping path subclause. In the scoping path subclause
- 3686 the scoping path shall be stated sequentially listing all adaptations of ordinary classes and
- 3687 associations that compose the scoping path, starting with the central class adaptation and
- 3688 ending with the scoping class adaptation.

3689 An example of the specification of profile attributes is provided in A.2.

3690 **6.15.5.4 Requirements for the specification of the summary**

3691 If the summary is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 6.15.5.2), that
3692 subclause shall be named "Synopsis".

3693 The first paragraph of the summary shall briefly summarize the purpose of the profile such that it may be
3694 used in other documents to describe the subject profile.

3695 Further paragraphs may provide more detailed summary information, including text that describes the
3696 usage of the central and the scoping class adaptations.

3697 If the subject profile is an abstract profile, the following statement shall be included as the last paragraph
3698 at the end of the summary:

3699 "This abstract profile shall not be directly implemented; implementations shall be based on a
3700 profile that is derived from this profile."

3701 An example of a summary is provided in A.2.

3702 **6.15.5.5 Requirements for the specification of the table of profile references**

3703 If the table of profile references is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see
3704 6.15.5.2), that subclause shall be named "Profile references".

3705 If the subject profile references other profiles, the requirements for profile references shall be listed in a
3706 table of profile references, as defined in this subclause. In that table each profile reference shall conform
3707 to the requirements in 5.14.

3708 The table of profile references shall be labeled: "Profile references". In

3709 Table 7, requirements for columns in the table of profile references are defined. Each required column is
3710 described by an entry in the list provided in

3711 Table 7. Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash
3712 and the requirements for cells under that column.

3713 **Table 7 – Requirements for columns of the table of profile reference**

Profile reference name – Cell values shall state the name of the profile reference within the subject profile; see 5.21.1.

Profile name – Cell values shall state the registered name of the referenced profile; see 5.11.2.

Organization – Cell values shall state the registered organization of the referenced profile; see 5.11.4.

Version – Cell values shall state the value of the major and the minor version identifier of the registered version of the referenced profile that is minimally required by the subject profile; see 5.11.3.

Relationship – Cell values shall state the type of the profile reference; see 5.21.2.

Description – Cell values shall conform to the following rules:

A short description of the referenced profile and its relationship to the subject profile shall be provided. The short description should focus on the use of the referenced profile in the context of the subject profile.

For conditional profiles the condition shall be specified using one of the mechanisms specified in 5.9.

If the text in the "Description" cell would exceed a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words), the description shall be put in a separate subclause of the "Synopsis" clause that is referenced from the cell.

3714 If the subject profile does not reference other profiles, this shall be stated using the phrase "No references
3715 to other profiles are defined in this profile." In this case, the table shall not be included.

3716 An example of a table of profile references is provided in ANNEX A.2.

3717 **6.15.5.6 Requirements for the specification of the tables of registry references**

3718 If the tables of registry references are specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see
3719 6.15.5.2), that subclause shall be named "Registry references".

3720 If the subject profile references message registries, the message registry references shall be listed in a
3721 table of message registry references, as defined in this subclause. The table of message registry
3722 references shall be labeled: "Message registry references".

3723 If the subject profile references metric registries, the metric registry references shall be listed in a table of
3724 metric registry references, as defined in this subclause. The table of metric registry references shall be
3725 labeled: "Metric registry references".

3726 In Table 8, requirements for columns in tables of registry references are defined. Each required column is
3727 described by an entry in the list provided in Table 8. Each list entry starts with the required name of the
3728 table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

3729 **Table 8 – Requirements for columns of the tables of registry references**

| |
|---|
| <p>Registry reference name – Cell values shall state the name of the registry reference within the subject profile.</p> <p>Registry identifier – Cell values shall state the identification of the referenced registry.</p> <p>Organization – Cell values shall state the name of the organization that owns the referenced registry.</p> <p>Version – Cell values shall state the version of the referenced registry.</p> <p>Description – Cell values should provide a description of the use of referenced registry within the subject profile.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <p>If the value in any Description cell would exceed a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words), a separate subclause shall be provided within the "Implementation" clause, and the description shall be provided as part of that separate subclause. The separate subclause shall be referenced from the table entry, as follows:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">"See" WS SubclauseNumber "."</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">SubclauseNumber is the number of the separate subclause.</p> |
|---|

3730 **6.15.5.7 Requirements for the specification of the table of features**

3731 If the table of features is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 6.15.5.2),
3732 that subclause shall be named "Features".

3733 If the subject profile defines features (see 5.20), these shall be listed in a table of features, as defined in
3734 this subclause.

3735 NOTE Both the condensed and the traditional profile specification structure provide for the definition of features,
3736 enabling the definition of features in revisions of existing profile specifications (originally written in compliance to
3737 version 1.0 of this guide) by upgrading to version 1.1 of this guide. However, note that the upgrade may require minor
3738 formal adjustments of the original version to comply with version 1.1 of this guide.

3739 The table of features shall be labeled: "Features". In Table 9 requirements for columns in tables of
3740 features are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 9. Each
3741 list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the
3742 requirements for cells under that column.

3743

Table 9 – Requirements for columns of the table of features

| |
|---|
| <p>Feature name – Cell values shall state the name of the feature; see 5.20.3.</p> <p>Granularity – Cell values shall state whether the feature can be implemented for the profile as a whole, or for specific adaptation instances.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If the feature can be implemented for the profile as a whole, the Granularity cell value shall be "profile". – If the feature can be implemented for specific adaptation instances, the Granularity cell value shall be the name of the adaptation, followed by "instance". <p>Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the feature.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If the feature is conditional, the cell value shall be "Conditional". – If the feature is conditional exclusive, the cell value shall be "Conditional exclusive". – If the feature is optional, the cell value shall be "Optional". <p>Description – Cell values shall provide a description of the feature.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The feature definition subclause in the "Implementation" clause (see 6.15.7.3) shall be referenced. – No other text should be added. |
|---|

3744 If the specified profile does not define features, the following text shall be stated: "No features are defined
3745 in this profile." In this case, the table shall not be included.

3746 An example of a table of features is provided in A.2.

3747 **6.15.5.8 Requirements for the specification of the table of adaptations**

3748 The adaptations (see 5.19) defined in the subject profile shall be listed in a table of adaptations.

3749 The placement of the table depends on the profile specification structure that is applied by the subject
3750 profile, as follows:

3751 If the traditional profile specification structure is applied by the subject profile, the table of
3752 adaptations shall be specified in the "Overview" subclause of the "CIM elements" clause (see
3753 6.15.10.2), and the requirements for a table of adaptations as part of the "Synopsis" clause as
3754 specified in the remaining part of this subclause do not apply.

3755 If the condensed profile specification structure is applied by the subject profile, a table of adaptations
3756 shall be specified as part of the "Synopsis" clause. All class adaptations (including the adaptations of
3757 ordinary classes, of association classes, and of indication classes) defined by the subject profile shall
3758 be listed in the table of adaptations.

3759 If the table of adaptations is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 6.15.5.2),
3760 that subclause shall be named "Adaptations".

3761 The table of adaptations shall be labeled: "Adaptations". In Table 10, requirements for columns in the
3762 table of adaptations are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in
3763 Table 10. Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a
3764 dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

3765

Table 10 – Requirements for columns of the table of adaptations

Adaptation – Cell values shall state the name of the adaptation;

The following rules apply:

- If an adaptation is based on other adaptations, the cell in the "Adaptation" column shall span all the cells in the other columns that are related to the specified adaptation.

Elements – Cells pertaining to elements of one adaptation are specified in separate subcells that are spanned by the cell in the "Adaptation" column.

The following rules apply:

- The first subcell shall contain the name of the adapted class.
- If base adaptations are defined, these may be stated in subsequent subcells. This should only be done for adaptations that are not described in a separate adaptation-specific subclause, as detailed with the rules for the Description column.

The following ABNF defined format applies:

```
AdaptationReference = [ ProfileName ":@" ] AdaptationName
```

If a base adaptation is defined in a referenced profile, `ProfileName` shall be the profile reference name (see 5.21). `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the base adaptation.

Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level for the adaptation; see 6.10.

The following rules apply:

- If an adaptation is based on other adaptations, and different requirement levels apply, these shall be specified in separate cells in this column; however, within the scope of a cell in the "Adaptation" column, if all base adaptations listed in corresponding cells in the "Elements" column are required with the same requirement level, the respective subcells in the "Requirement" column may be collapsed into one cell containing the common requirement level.
- If the implementation type (see 5.19.8) of an adaptation is "abstract", the cell shall contain a statement indicating that the requirement level is defined in derived adaptations.

Description – Cell values shall provide a description of the adaptation.

The following rules apply:

- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the adaptation description should be provided in a separate subclause of the "Adaptations" subclause within the "Implementation" clause; see 6.15.7.4.3. The adaptation specific subclause shall be referenced from the table entry, as follows:

"See" AdaptationSubclauseNumber "."

AdaptationSubclauseNumber shall be the number of the adaptation-specific subclause.

- If the description is provided within the table cell, it shall state the implementation type.
- If no requirements are defined beyond those defined in the schema definition of the adapted class, this may be indicated by the phrase:

"See CIM schema definition."

- If present, the subcells for the descriptions of base adaptations shall contain a reference to the subclause or profile defining the base adaptation, as follows:

"See " BaseReference "."

where BaseReference either refers to the subclause that describes the base adaptation, or is the internal document reference to the profile that defines the base adaptation.

3766 The adaptation table shall be subdivided into two table sections that are named as follows:

3767 "Instantiated and embedded class adaptations"

3768 "Indications and exceptions"

3769 Each table section shall be preceded by a row that spans all columns and contains the section name. The
 3770 table sections shall contain the entries for adaptations defined by the profile with respective
 3771 implementation types (see 5.19.8).

3772 The sequence in which adaptations are listed within each of these table sections is not defined in this
 3773 guide. Profiles may use any reasonable approach for that, for example an alphabetical sequence or an
 3774 order implied by dependencies of the adaptations. Also, the sequence as listed in the table of adaptations
 3775 may differ from the sequence of referenced adaptation-specific subclauses (see 6.15.7.4).

3776 If a profile does not define adaptations for indications and/or exceptions, the table still shall contain the
 3777 "Indications and exceptions" table section, with one entry stating that no adaptations for indications or
 3778 exceptions are defined.

3779 An example of a table of adaptations is provided in A.2.

3780 **6.15.5.9 Requirements for the specification of the table of use cases**

3781 A table of use cases is only required if the condensed profile specification structure is applied by the
 3782 subject profile.

3783 In this case, the table of use cases shall be specified as part of the "Synopsis" clause. All use cases
 3784 defined by the subject profile within the "Use cases" clause (see 6.15.9) shall be listed in the table of use
 3785 cases.

3786 If the table of use cases is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 6.15.5.2),
 3787 that subclause shall be named "Use cases".

3788 The table of use cases shall be labeled: "Use cases". In Table 11, requirements for columns in the table
 3789 of use cases are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 11.
 3790 Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the
 3791 requirements for cells under that column.

3792 **Table 11 – Requirements for columns of the table of use cases**

Use case – Cell values shall state the name of the use case; see 6.15.9.3.1.

Description – Cell values shall refer to the subclause within the "Use cases" clause that describes the use case;
 see 6.15.9.3.

3793 An example of a table of use cases is provided in A.2.

3794 **6.15.6 Requirements for the specification of the "Description" clause**

3795 This subclause defines requirements for the "Description" clause in profile specifications.

3796 Each profile specification shall have a "Description" clause.

3797 The "Description" clause in profile specifications:

- 3798 • Shall provide an overview of the subject profile.
- 3799 • Should describe the management domain addressed by the subject profile, and the major
 3800 object types for which the subject profile defines adaptations.
- 3801 • Should contain some or all of the following diagrams that detail the purpose of the subject
 3802 profile:
 - 3803 – The "Description" clause of profile specifications written in conformance with the
 3804 condensed structure (see 6.14.2) should contain one or more UML composite structure

3805 diagrams (see 6.9.2.2) that detail the collaboration defined by the subject profile, or should
 3806 contain one or more DMTF adaptation diagrams (see 6.9.3).

3807 Each adaptation defined by the subject profile should appear at least once in these
 3808 diagrams.

3809 – The "Description" clause of profile specifications written in conformance with the traditional
 3810 structure (see 6.14.3) should contain one or more DMTF profile class diagrams (see
 3811 6.14.3.2) that detail the model defined by the subject profile.

3812 – The "Description" clause may contain UML object diagrams (see 6.9.3) providing details on
 3813 CIM instances, their interactions, and their relationship to managed objects in managed
 3814 environments, as required by the subject profile.

3815 Table 12 lists the requirements for diagrams as part of the Description clause within profile specifications.
 3816 Note that the requirements depend on the structure chosen for the profile specification; see 6.14.

3817 **Table 12 – Profile diagram types**

| Diagram type | Usage requirements | | Description |
|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| | Traditional structure | Condensed structure | Reference |
| DMTF adaptation | Optional | Required | See 6.9.3. |
| DMTF object | Optional | Optional | See 6.9.4. |

3818 An example of a "Description" clause is provided in A.3.

3819 **6.15.7 Requirements for the specification of the "Implementation" clause**

3820 This subclause defines requirements for the "Implementation" clause in profile specifications.

3821 **6.15.7.1 General**

3822 Each profile specification shall have an "Implementation" clause.

3823 If the profile is a derived profile that does not add specifications for implementations beyond those defined
 3824 in its (direct and indirect) base profile(s), the "Implementation" clause shall only contain the statement "All
 3825 implementation requirements are defined in base profile(s)."

3826 **6.15.7.2 Usage of subclauses**

3827 The "Implementation" clause should be structured into subclauses.

3828 Subclauses may introduce subtopics that apply to one or more profile elements (for example a subclause
 3829 titled "Element discovery"), or they may introduce subtopics that address specific profile elements (for
 3830 example, a specific adaptation defined in a subclause titled "Adaptation: Fan: CIM_Fan").

3831 Subclauses of the "Implementation" clause should be ordered as follows:

- 3832 1) Subclauses that describe the management domain and managed object types
- 3833 2) Subclauses that introduce concepts
- 3834 3) An optional "Features" subclause, as detailed in 6.15.7.3
- 3835 4) A required "Adaptations" subclause, as detailed in 6.15.7.4

3836 NOTE ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 requires that at each subclause level at least two subclauses are specified. For
3837 that reason, in the case where according to this guide only the "Adaptations" subclause would be required, ISO/IEC
3838 Directives, Part 2 would require another subclause of the "Implementation" clause. In this case, an initial subclause
3839 named "General" containing general definitions is recommended.

3840 **6.15.7.3 Requirements for the specification of features**

3841 If the subject profile defines features (see 5.20), the "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate
3842 subclause named "Features".

3843 The "Features" subclause of the "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate subclause for each
3844 defined feature.

3845 The title of each feature-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

```
3846 FeatureSubclauseTitle = "Feature: " FeatureName
```

3847 The value of `FeatureName` shall be the name of the feature; see 5.20.3.

3848 If the feature is conditional, that shall be stated first in the feature definition subclause, along with the
3849 specification of the condition, following the conventions established in 6.12.

3850 Each feature definition subclause shall provide all of the following (in the order stated):

- 3851 1) A description of the feature
- 3852 2) The granularity of the feature; see 5.20.5
- 3853 3) The requirement level of the feature; see 5.20.4
- 3854 4) A description of one or more discovery mechanisms for the feature; see 5.20.6.

3855 The implementation requirements that result from a decision to implement a feature are not defined as
3856 part of the feature definition subclause; see 5.20.7.

3857 **6.15.7.4 Requirements for the specification of adaptations**

3858 This subclause defines requirements for the specification of adaptations, addressing the requirements of
3859 5.19.

3860 **6.15.7.4.1 General**

3861 The "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate subclause named "Adaptations".

3862 The "Adaptations" subclause of the "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate subclause for each
3863 adaptation (including adaptations of association classes or indication classes) defined by the profile as
3864 specified in 6.15.7.4.3, unless the adaptation is a trivial class adaptation.

3865 A trivial class adaptation does not define additional requirements beyond those defined by the adapted
3866 class and its base adaptations. Trivial class adaptations typically are defined as a point of reference for
3867 other profiles, such that referencing profiles can define adaptations based on them. The description of a
3868 trivial class adaptation may be solely provided in the entry in the table of adaptations within the
3869 "Synopsis" clause if the space requirements for table cells are met; see 6.15.5.8.

3870 The sequence in which adaptation-specific subclauses appear in the "Adaptations" subclause is not
3871 defined in this guide. Profiles may use any reasonable approach for that, for example an alphabetical
3872 sequence or an order implied by dependencies of the adaptations. Also, the sequence as listed in the
3873 table of adaptations (see 6.15.5.8) may differ from the sequence of referenced adaptation-specific
3874 subclauses.

3875 6.15.7.4.2 Requirements for the specification of conventions

3876 The "Adaptations" subclause of the "Implementation" clause shall contain a subclause named
3877 "Conventions" that specifies the conventions applied within the profile specification for the definition of
3878 adaptations. The "Conventions" subclause shall precede any subclause defining adaptations.

3879 This guide requires profiles to repeat certain schema requirements (see 5.19.14.3). Within a profile
3880 specification, in these cases the convention shall be to state the name of the qualifier if its effective value
3881 is True, and to not state the name of the qualifier if its effective value is False. This convention shall be
3882 applied for the Key and the Required qualifiers as part of property requirements as required by 5.19.14.3
3883 and as detailed in 6.15.7.4.3, and for the In, Out, and Required qualifiers as part of method parameter
3884 requirements as detailed in 6.15.7.4.6. If applied anywhere in a profile specification, this convention shall
3885 explicitly be stated as part of the "Conventions" subclause, along with a brief description of what the
3886 respective qualifier value means.

3887 This guide requires profiles to select [DSP0223](#) as the operations specification that defines the operations
3888 for that the profile defines operation requirements; see 5.19.12.2. Profiles are required to specify
3889 operation requirements individually per adaptation (see 6.15.7.4.7). This requirement shall be stated in
3890 the form of a respective convention within the "Conventions" subclause.

3891 An example of an adaptation related "Conventions" subclause is provided in A.4.3.

3892 6.15.7.4.3 Requirements for the specification of individual adaptations

3893 Each adaptation definition subclause within the "Adaptation" subclause of the "Implementation" clause
3894 shall be titled

```
3895 AdaptationClauseTitle = [ "Adaptation:" WS ] AdaptationName ":" AdaptedClassName
```

3896 `AdaptationName` is the name of the adaptation, and `AdaptedClassName` is the name of the adapted
3897 class.

3898 Each adaptation-specific subclause shall define implementation requirements. Implementation
3899 requirements may be defined directly within the adaptation-specific subclause, or within separate
3900 subclauses.

3901 Each adaptation-specific subclause shall state the implementation type of the adaptation (see 5.19.8).

3902 Requirements for elements of adaptations, such as base adaptations, alert messages, metrics,
3903 properties, methods, and operations, shall be stated in the form of an "Element requirements" table. In
3904 that table each entry shall be assigned a requirement level. If needed, the table entries may refer to other
3905 subclauses that provide detail information.

3906 NOTE Implementation requirements may also be imposed from other sources, such as the schema or the
3907 operations specification. Clause 6 details a merge algorithm that produces a set of implementation adaptations,
3908 merging the implementation requirements from those various sources.

3909 The "Element requirements" table listing required elements of the adaptation shall be labeled:

```
3910 ElementRequirementsTableTitle = AdaptationName ":" WS "Element requirements"
```

3911 `AdaptationName` is the name of the adaptation. Table 13 defines requirements for columns in
3912 adaptation element tables. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 13.
3913 Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the
3914 requirements for cells under that column.

Table 13 – Requirements for columns of "Element requirements" tables

| |
|---|
| <p>Element – Cell values shall state the name of the base element, property, method, or operation, or the identification of a metric for which the subject profile defines requirements as part of the defined adaptation.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If base adaptations are defined, these shall be stated, using the following format: |
| <pre>AdaptationReference = [ProfileRefName ":@"] AdaptationName</pre> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If a base adaptation is defined in a referenced profile, <code>ProfileRefName</code> shall be the profile reference name. <code>AdaptationName</code> shall be the name of the base adaptation. – If an alert indication adaptation refers to one or more alert messages defined in a message registry (see 5.22), the identifier of the alert message shall be stated, using the following format: |
| <pre>MessageIdentification = MessageRegistryRefName ":@" MessageID</pre> |
| <p><code>MessageRegistryRefName</code> shall be the message registry reference name for the registry defining the message on which the alert indication is based, and <code>MessageID</code> shall be the message ID of that message. The message ID is the concatenation of the value of the PREFIX attribute and the SEQUENCE_NUMBER attribute from the MESSAGE_ID element that describes the message in the message registry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Array property names shall be suffixed with "[]". – Method names and operation names shall be suffixed with "()". – Names of association traversal operations (see 6.15.7.4.8) shall be specified as follows: OpName "()" [" WS "for" WS AssocAdaptationSet] where OpName is the operation name, as defined by the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2). – If the "for" suffix is not specified, the operation requirement affects all association adaptations specified by the subject profile that reference the adaptation defined in the subclause containing the table. – If the "for" suffix is specified, the operation requirement affects a subset of the association adaptations specified by the subject profile that reference the adaptation defined in the subclause containing the table. In this case, AssocAdaptationSet shall list that subset, as follows: |
| <pre>AssocAdaptationSet = AssocAdaptation [", " WS AssocAdaptationSet]</pre> |
| <p><code>AssocAdaptation</code> shall identify an association adaptation specified by the subject profile that references the adaptation defined in the subclause containing the table.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Identifications of metric-defining metric requirements shall be stated using the following format: |
| <pre>MetricReference = MetricRegistryRefName ":@" METRICID</pre> |
| <p><code>MetricRegistryRefName</code> is the name of the metric registry reference that references the metric registry within that the metric for the metric requirement is defined, and <code>METRICID</code> identifies the metric within the metric registry, as defined in DSP8028.</p> |
| <p>Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the element requirement.</p> <p>The requirement level shall be stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 6.10.</p> <p>For property requirements, the presentation requirement level (see 5.8.1) shall be stated.</p> <p>If the profile allows the value Null for the property (see 5.19.15.6), the requirement level may be amended, as follows:</p> |
| <pre>Requirement = RequirementLevel ", " WS "NullOK"</pre> |
| <p><code>RequirementLevel</code> is the requirement level stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 6.10.</p> <p>If a property requirement also contains property initialization value requirements (see 5.19.16.2) and/or property modification value requirements (see 5.19.16.3), these shall be placed into a separate subclause that is referenced in by the value in the "Description" cell (as detailed under "Description").</p> |

Description – Cell values shall conform to the following specifications:

The following rules apply:

- Repetition of the effective qualifier values from the schema definition of the adapted class:
- The convention requirements defined in 6.15.7.4.2 apply.
- If the effective value of the Key qualifier is True for a property, the word "Key" shall be listed first in the description of the property requirements; if the effective value is False, the name of the qualifier shall not be listed.
- If the effective value of the Required qualifier is True for a property, the word "Required" shall be listed first in the description of the property requirements; if the effective value is False, the name of the qualifier shall not be listed. Note that the meaning of the Required qualifier is that the value of the qualified element shall not be Null.
- If both qualifiers have the effective value True, their names shall be presented in the form of a comma separated list.
- If the requirement level is "conditional" or "conditional exclusive", and unless the condition is already stated in the "Requirement" column, the condition shall be stated here, as detailed in 6.12.
- The managed object type that is modeled by the adaptation.
- The definition of additional requirements shall be stated, as follows:
 - Property requirements shall be specified as detailed in 6.15.7.4.4.
 - Method requirements shall be specified as detailed in 6.15.7.4.6.
 - Operation requirements shall be specified as detailed in 6.15.7.4.7 and 6.15.7.4.8.
- The keyword "Deprecated" shall be stated if the required element is marked deprecated by the profile, in the schema definition or in the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2); for details, see 6.8.
 - If present, and if defined in the subject profile, the cell for the description of a base adaptation shall contain a reference to the subclause defining the base adaptation, as follows:

"See " SubclauseNumber "."

where SubclauseNumber is the number of the subclause containing the definition of the base adaptation.
 - If defined in a referenced profile, the cell for the description of a base adaptation shall contain a reference to the referenced profile defining the base adaptation, as follows:

"See " ProfileReference "."

where ProfileReference is the internal document reference to the profile that defines the base adaptation.
- If present, the cell for descriptions of an alert message should contain a reference to the message registry defining the alert message, as follows:

"See " MessageRegistryReference "."

where MessageRegistryReference is the internal document reference to the message registry that defines the alert message.
- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the element description should be placed in a separate subclause of the adaptation-specific subclause, and referenced from the table cell.

NOTE Version 1.0 of this guide defined "Notes" as the title of the third column; this was changed to "Description" for coherent definition of tables specified in this guide. Many profiles based on version 1.0 of this guide use "Description" already.

3916 Depending on the presence of respective requirements, adaptation element tables shall be subdivided
 3917 into table sections. Each table section shall be preceded by a row that spans all columns and contains the
 3918 section name. The following conventions should be applied:

- 3919 • If base adaptations are defined, these should be listed in a table section named Base
3920 adaptations.
- 3921 • If alert messages are referenced as part of an alert indication adaptation, the alert message
3922 references should be listed in a table section named Alert messages.
- 3923 • If metric definitions are referenced as part of an adaptation defining metric requirements, the
3924 metric definition references should be listed in a table section named Metrics.
- 3925 • If property requirements are defined, these should be listed in a table section named
3926 Properties.
- 3927 • If method requirements are defined, these should be listed in a table section named Methods.
- 3928 • If operation requirements are defined, these should be listed in a table section named
3929 Operations.

3930 Requirements for optional properties, methods, or operations shall not be listed unless the profile defines
3931 additional requirements for these elements beyond those defined in the schema or in the operations
3932 specification (see 5.19.12.2).

3933 **6.15.7.4.4 Requirements for the specification of property requirements**

3934 This subclause details the specification of property requirements in profile specifications, addressing the
3935 requirements of 5.19.14.

3936 Property requirements not fitting into the "Element requirements" table shall be placed in a separate
3937 subclause of the adaptation specific subclause defining the respective adaptation. In this case, the title of
3938 the property-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

```
3939 PropertySubclauseTitle = "Property:" WS [ AdaptationName ":" ] PropertyName [ "[ ]" ]
```

3940 The square brackets after `PropertyName` are required for array properties.

3941 As required in 5.19.14, property requirements should specify a relationship to the aspect of managed
3942 objects represented by adaptation instances that is reflected by the property.

3943 Property requirements may specify value constraints (see 5.19.15); in this case, the conventions defined
3944 in 6.13 shall be applied.

3945 Property requirements may specify a default value, as detailed in 6.13.1.

3946 Property requirements of adaptations with the "instantiated" implementation type may contain input value
3947 requirement (see 5.19.16); if present, input value requirements shall be specified as defined in 6.15.7.4.5.

3948 Property requirements on CIM references shall state the multiplicity, as detailed in 6.13.2.

3949 **6.15.7.4.5 Requirements for the specification of input value requirements**

3950 Input value requirements may be specified as part of property requirements (see 6.15.7.4.4), or as part of
3951 parameter requirements in method requirements (see 6.15.7.4.6).

3952 Requirements for input values defined by the subject profile shall be provided in an input value
3953 requirements table.

3954 An input value requirements table shall be labeled:

```
3955 InputValueTableTitle = ElementName ":" WS ValueType WS "value requirements"
```

```
3956 ElementName = PropertyName / ParameterName
```

```
3957 ValueType = "Initialization" / "Modification" / "Input"
```

3958 ElementName is the name of the property or parameter for which input value requirements are specified.
 3959 For properties, only the value types "Initialization" and "Modification" apply; for parameters
 3960 only the value type "Input" applies.

3961 In Table 14, requirements for columns in input value requirements tables are defined. Each required
 3962 column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 14. Each list entry starts with the required
 3963 name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that
 3964 column.

3965 **Table 14 – Requirements for columns in "Input value requirements" tables**

| |
|---|
| <p>Input value – Cell values shall state the required input value.</p> <p>Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the input value requirement. The requirement level shall be stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 6.10.</p> <p>Description – Cell values shall provide details about the use of the input value as required by the subject profile.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If the schema descriptions of a specific input value adequately describe its use as required by the subject profile, then the method-specific subclause shall refer to the method parameter description in the schema with the statement "See schema description". – Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the input value requirement description should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause and referenced from the table cell. |
|---|

3966 **6.15.7.4.6 Requirements for the specification of method requirements**

3967 This subclause details the specification of method requirements in profile specifications, addressing the
 3968 requirements of 5.19.11, namely the specification of constraints on methods and their parameters
 3969 according to the requirements of 5.19.11.2, the specification of the method semantics as required in
 3970 5.19.11.3 and the specification of the reporting of method errors as required in 5.19.11.4.

3971 Method requirements not fitting into the "Element requirements" table defined in 6.15.7.4.3 shall be
 3972 placed in a separate subclause of the adaptation specific subclause defining the respective adaptation;
 3973 this applies to all method requirements that define parameter requirements.

3974 If specified, the title of the method-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

3975 `MethodSubclauseTitle = "Method:" WS [AdaptationName ":"] MethodName "()"`

3976 If stated, AdaptationName shall be the name of the adaptation. MethodName shall be the name of the
 3977 method as defined by the profile.

3978 If the method requirement is defined with a requirement level other than "mandatory", the requirement
 3979 level shall be repeated, applying the conventions defined in 6.10.

3980 The method description shall detail the semantics of the method in prose text, addressing the
 3981 requirements of 6.15.8. The method description may contain informal references to use cases (see
 3982 6.15.9).

3983 Requirements for method parameters defined by the subject profile shall be provided in a method
 3984 parameter requirements table.

3985 A method parameter requirements table shall be labeled:

3986 `MethodParameterTableTitle = [AdaptationName ":"] MethodName "()" WS "Parameter
 3987 requirements"`

3988 In Table 15, requirements for columns in method parameter requirements tables are defined. Each
 3989 required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 15. Each list entry starts with the
 3990 required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under
 3991 that column.

3992

3993 **Table 15 – Requirements for columns in "Method parameter requirements" tables**

Name – Cell values shall state the parameter name.

Description – Cell values shall provide details about the use of the parameter as required by the subject profile.

The following rules apply:

- If the effective value of one or more of the following qualifiers:

In, Out, Required

defined by the schema definition of the adapted class is True for a method parameter, the name of that qualifier shall be listed first in the description of the method parameter in the method parameter table; if the effective value is False, the name of the qualifier shall not be listed. If more than one of these qualifiers have the effective value True, their names shall be presented in the form of a comma separated list. The convention requirements defined in 6.15.7.4.2 apply.

- If the schema descriptions of a parameter adequately describe its use as required by the subject profile, the method-specific subclause shall refer to the method parameter description in the schema with the statement "See schema description".
- Value constraints may be specified; in this case, the conventions defined in 6.13 shall be applied.
- A default value may be specified, as detailed in 5.19.15.2
- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the description should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause that is referenced from the table cell.
- If input parameter value requirements (see 5.19.16.4) are specified for a parameter, the parameter description shall be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause that is referenced from the "Description" table cell. In this case the parameter specific subclause shall also contain the input parameter value requirements, in the format required in 6.15.7.4.5.

NOTE Version 1.0 of this guide defined a Qualifiers column and a Type column; these were dropped with version 1.1 of this guide. Instead, the requirement for repeating the effective value of schema defined qualifiers was replaced by the first rule defined for the Description column above; repeating the schema defined type of a parameter is no longer required. The former "Description/Values" column is now titled "Description" for coherent definition of tables specified in this guide.

3994 The method parameter requirements table shall contain a special parameter named "ReturnValue" that
 3995 describes the use of return values as required by the subject profile.

3996 If the schema definition of method return values does not adequately describe their use as required by
 3997 the subject profile, that description shall be provided in the corresponding cell in the method parameter
 3998 requirements table or a subclause referenced from there.

3999 If the schema definition of method return values adequately describe their use as required by the subject
 4000 profile, the description should refer to the schema. For example, an Example Fan profile describing return
 4001 values for the RequestStateChange() method applied to instances of the CIM_Fan class representing
 4002 fans might state "For return values, see the schema definition of the CIM_EnabledLogicalElement class."

4003 The reporting of method errors as required in 5.19.11.4 shall be specified as follows:

4004 If the subject profile defines requirements for standard messages for a method, these shall be stated as
4005 defined in 6.15.7.4.9.

4006 If the subject profile defines additional constraints on CIM status codes for a method, these shall be
4007 stated as defined in 6.15.7.4.9.

4008 **6.15.7.4.7 Requirements for the specification of operation requirements**

4009 Operation requirements not fitting into the "Element requirements" table shall be placed in a separate
4010 subclause of the adaptation specific subclause defining the respective adaptation. In this case, the title of
4011 the operation-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

```
4012 OperationSubclauseTitle = "Operation:" WS [ AdaptationName ":" ] OperationName "( )"
```

4013 If stated, `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the adaptation. `OperationName` shall identify the
4014 operation (that is defined in the operations specification - see 5.19.12.2) for that operation requirements
4015 are defined; see 6.15.7.4.2. The operation requirements shall be based on the definition of operations in
4016 the operations specification.

4017 If the operation requirement is defined with a requirement level other than "mandatory", the requirement
4018 level shall be repeated, applying the conventions defined in 6.10.

4019 Operation requirements may extend the behavior defined in the referenced operations specification (for
4020 example, by requiring specific effects on the managed environment); the description of such extensions
4021 should include all side effects and expected results in the managed environment.

4022 The reporting of operation errors as required in 5.19.12.6 shall be specified as follows:

4023 If the subject profile defines requirements for standard messages for an operation, these shall be stated
4024 as defined in 6.15.7.4.9.

4025 If the subject profile defines additional constraints on CIM status code values for an operation, these shall
4026 be stated as defined in 6.15.7.4.9.

4027 **6.15.7.4.8 Requirements for the specification of operations related to association traversal**

4028 Operations that result in associated or association instances (or instance paths) relative to a source
4029 instance are called association traversal operations. Profiles shall define the requirements for association
4030 traversal operations as part of the operation requirements of adaptations that are referenced by
4031 association adaptations, not as part of the operation requirements of the association adaptations
4032 themselves.

4033 In addition, a particular adaptation defined by the subject profile can be the source point for the traversal
4034 of more than one association adaptation. If, in this case, the requirements are different for each
4035 association adaptation that can be traversed, separate operation requirements are required for each
4036 traversable association within the definition of that source adaptation.

4037 For example, if a profile defines operations as defined in [DSP0223](#) in order to traverse its `SystemDevice`
4038 adaptation of the `CIM_SystemDevice` association, the requirements for association traversal operations
4039 such as the `Associator()` and `AssociatorNames()` operations would not be specified as part of the
4040 operation requirements of the `SystemDevice` adaptation; instead, the operation requirements for
4041 association traversal operations would be specified as part of the operation requirements of adaptations
4042 referenced by the `SystemDevice` association adaptation, in this case for example a `System` adaptation of
4043 the `CIM_System` class and a `LogicalDevice` adaptation the `CIM_LogicalDevice` class.

4044 NOTE Associations may be adapted such that adaptations of subclasses of the classes referenced by the adapted
4045 association are referenced; see 5.19.14.

4046 EXPERIMENTAL**4047 6.15.7.4.9 Requirements for the specification of error reporting requirements**

4048 If the subject profile does not define error reporting requirements for a method (see 5.19.11.4) or
4049 operation (see 5.19.12.6), no error reporting requirements shall be defined in the method-specific or
4050 operation-specific subclause; instead, the subclause should contain a statement such as "No error
4051 reporting requirements are defined." Alternatively, if the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2 and
4052 6.15.7.4.2) defines error reporting requirements, a statement such as

4053 `"For error reporting requirements, see" OpSpec "."`

4054 should be used, with `OpSpec` referring to the operations specification.

4055 **NOTE** These statements are not required for method or operation requirements solely described through a table
4056 entry in the "Element requirements" table (see 6.15.7.4.3), because in this case there is no method-specific or
4057 operation-specific subclause.

4058 If a profile defines error reporting requirements (see 5.19.11.4 and 5.19.12.6), these shall be defined in an
4059 error reporting requirements table.

4060 The error reporting requirements table shall be labeled as follows:

```
4061 ErrorReportingRequirementsTableTitle =  
4062     ActivityName "( )" WS "Error reporting requirements"  
4063 ActivityName = MethodName / OperationName
```

4064 `MethodName` is name of the method defined in the profile for which error reporting requirements are
4065 defined. `OperationName` is name of the operation (defined in the operations specification - see
4066 5.19.12.2) for which the profile defines profile-specific error reporting requirements.

4067 In Table 16 requirements for columns of the error reporting requirements table are defined. Each column
4068 is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 16. Each list entry starts with the required name of
4069 the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for each cell within that column.

4070 **Table 16 – Requirements for columns of the "Error reporting requirements" table**

| |
|--|
| <p>Reporting mechanism – Each cell values shall identify an error reporting mechanisms.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Error reporting mechanisms shall be listed using the following format: <pre> ErrorReportingMechanism = MessageIdentificationList / CimStatusCode MessageIdentificationList = MessageIdentification ["," WS MessageIdentificationList] MessageIdentification = MessageRegistryRefName ":@" MessageID </pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - MessageRegistryRefName shall be the message registry reference name (see 6.15.5.6) of the registry in which the standard error message is defined, and MessageID shall be the message ID of that error message. The message ID is the concatenation of the value of the PREFIX attribute and the SEQUENCE_NUMBER attribute from the MESSAGE_ID element that describes the message in the message registry. <p>CimStatusCode shall be a CIM status code.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The order of error reporting mechanisms listed in the table does not establish an order for their selection in case of respective error situations. However, a profile may establish that interpretation for individual or for all error reporting requirements specified in the profile. Note that some operations specifications imply an order for in their error reporting requirements. <p>Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the input value requirement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The requirement level shall be stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 6.10. <p>Description – Cell values shall state the message text (abbreviated, if appropriate).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the message description should be placed in a separate subclause and referenced from the table |
|--|

4071 An example of an error reporting requirements table is provided in A.4.4.

4072 **EXPERIMENTAL**

4073

4074 **DEPRECATED**

4075 Minor revisions of profiles written in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue using a
 4076 format as defined by Table 17 instead of the format defined in Table 16. However, return values and
 4077 messages are alternatives. Profiles should not define the use of return values for situations that result in a
 4078 CIM error, because in this case the method or operation does not return and no return value is returned.
 4079 Either an operation or method is successful at the operations level and returns a return value, or it is not
 4080 successful at the operations level, resulting in a CIM error containing zero or more messages.

4081 **Table 17 – Requirements for columns of the standard message table**

| |
|---|
| <p>(return) Message ID – Cell values shall state a return value in parenthesis followed by the name of the registering organization and the message ID from that organization.</p> <p>Message – Cell values shall state the message text (abbreviated, if appropriate).</p> |
|---|

4082 Each table cell should contain no more than a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words). If more text
 4083 is required, respective content shall be placed in a separate subclause and referenced from the table.

4084 **DEPRECATED**

4085 **6.15.7.4.9.1 Requirements for the specification of metric requirements**

4086 Metric requirements not fitting into the table defined in 6.15.7.4.3 shall be placed in a separate subclause
4087 of the subclause defining the respective adaptation.

4088 If specified, the title of the metric-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

4089 `MetricSubclauseTitle = "Metric: " MetricName`

4090 `MetricName` shall be the name of the metric as defined in the referenced metric registry.

4091 If the metric requirement is defined with a requirement level other than "mandatory", the requirement level
4092 shall be repeated, applying the conventions defined in 6.10.

4093 Metric requirements should detail the semantics of the metric as required in 5.19.10.

4094 **6.15.7.4.9.2 Requirements for the specification of instance requirements**

4095 Each adaptation definition subclause that defines an adaptation of an ordinary class or of an association
4096 class shall state instance requirements, as defined in 5.19.13. Instance requirements may be specified as
4097 part of the implementation requirements, or may be specified in a separate subclause.

4098 **6.15.7.4.9.3 Requirements for the specification of indication-generation requirements**

4099 Each adaptation definition subclause that defines an adaptation of an indication class shall state
4100 indication-generation requirements, as defined in 5.19.17.2. Indication-generation requirements may be
4101 specified as part of the implementation requirements, or may be specified in a separate subclause.
4102

4103 **DEPRECATED**

4104 Profile specifications that apply the condensed profile specification structure (see 6.14.2) shall not contain
 4105 a "Methods" clause because in this case respective content is already specified as part of adaptation
 4106 definitions within the "Implementation" clause; see 6.15.7.4.6 and 6.15.7.4.7.

4107 **6.15.8 Requirements for the specification of the "Methods" clause**

4108 This subclause details requirements for the "Methods" clause in profile specifications.

4109 **6.15.8.1 General**

4110 Profile specifications that apply the traditional profile specification structure (see 6.14.3) shall contain a
 4111 "Methods" clause.

4112 **6.15.8.2 Requirements for the specification of methods**

4113 This subclause specifies the definition of method requirements in profile specifications that apply the
 4114 traditional profile specification structure.

4115 **6.15.8.2.1 General**

4116 The "Methods" clause shall contain an "Extrinsic methods" subclause.

4117 If the profile specification specifies a specialized profile that does not add requirements for methods, but
 4118 one or more of its base profile(s) defines requirements for methods, the "Extrinsic methods" subclause
 4119 shall contain only the statement "All method requirements are defined in base profile(s)."

4120 If the profile specification specifies a profile that does not add adaptations for extrinsic methods, the
 4121 "Extrinsic methods" subclause shall contain only the statement "No method requirements are defined."

4122 **6.15.8.2.2 Method-specific subclauses**

4123 Each extrinsic method that is referenced by a class adaptation defined in a subject profile shall be
 4124 specified in a separate subclause of the "Extrinsic methods" subclause.

4125 The title of method-specific subclauses shall be formatted as follows:

4126 `MethodSubclauseTitle = ClassAdaptationName "." MethodName "()"`

4127 `ClassAdaptationName` shall be the name of the class adaptation. `MethodName` shall be the name of
 4128 the method.

4129 Method-specific subclauses shall be referenced from the subclause of the "CIM elements" clause that
 4130 defines the class adaptation referencing the method; see 6.15.10.3.

4131 The method-specific subclause should provide a description detailing the semantics of the method as
 4132 required in 5.19.11.3. The description may contain references to use cases (see 6.15.9).

4133 The description of the method parameters required by the subject profile shall be provided in a table.

4134 The table shall be labeled:

4135 `ParameterTableTitle = MethodName "() : Parameters"`

4136 In Table 18 requirements for columns in method parameter tables are defined. Each required column is
 4137 described by an entry in the list provided in Table 18. Each list entry starts with the required name of the
 4138 table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4139

Table 18 – Requirements for columns in method parameter tables

| |
|--|
| <p>Qualifiers – Cell values shall state parameter qualifiers as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The cell value shall list the textual value "In" if and only if the effective value of the In qualifier for the parameter is True. – The cell value shall list the textual value "Out" if and only if the effective value of the Out qualifier for the parameter is True. – The cell value shall list the textual value "Req" if and only if the effective value of the Required qualifier for the parameter is True. – A profile specification shall not change the interpretation of the value of the schema-defined In, Out, and Required qualifiers; it shall just present their effective values. <p>NOTE The textual value "Req" in a cell under the "Qualifiers" column does not indicate whether the profile requires an implementation of the parameter; however, a profile may establish value constraints on parameters (see 5.19.11.2).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Multiple textual values shall be separated by commas. <p>Name – Cell values shall state the parameter name.</p> <p>Type – Cell values shall state the parameter type.</p> <p>Description/Values – Cell values shall provide details about the use of the parameter as required by the profile.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If value constraints are defined, the conventions defined in 6.13 shall be applied. – The value in a Description/Value table cell should contain no more than a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words). Longer text passages should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause and referenced from the table cell. |
|--|

4140 If the schema descriptions of method parameters adequately describe the use of the method parameters
 4141 as required by the subject profile, the method-specific subclause shall refer to the method parameter
 4142 description in the schema with this statement: "See schema description."

4143 If the schema descriptions of method return values does not adequately describe their use as required by
 4144 the subject profile, the method-specific subclause shall provide a table specifying return values.

4145 The table shall be labeled:

4146 `ReturnValueTableTitle = MethodName "() : Return values"`

4147 In Table 19 requirements for columns of the return value table are defined. Each column is described by
 4148 an entry in the list provided in Table 19. Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column
 4149 in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for each cell within that column.

4150

Table 19 – Requirements for columns of the return value table

Value – Cell values shall state the numeric return value followed by the corresponding string description in parentheses. The description shall not be enclosed in quotes.

Example: "1 (Not Implemented)".

Description – Cell values shall provide details about the situation indicated by the return value.

The following rules apply:

- If a return value only applies under certain conditions, this shall be stated in the following form:
"Applicable only if the " ConditionalElement " is implemented."
- The value in a Description table cell should contain no more than a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words). Longer text passages should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause and referenced from the table cell.

4151 If the schema descriptions of method return values adequately describe their use as required by the
4152 subject profile, the method-specific subclause should refer to the schema. For example, an Example Fan
4153 profile describing return values for the RequestStateChange() method applied to instances of the
4154 CIM_Fan class representing fans might state, "For return values, see the schema definition of the
4155 CIM_EnabledLogicalElement class."

4156 If the subject profile specifies the use of standard messages for a method, these shall be stated as
4157 defined in 6.15.7.4.9. If the subject profile does not specify use of standard messages for a method, no
4158 table shall be provided in the method-specific subclause; instead, the method-specific subclause shall
4159 contain the statement: "No standard messages are defined."

4160 **6.15.8.3 Requirements for the specification of the "Operations" subclause**

4161 This subclause details requirements for the "Operations" subclause of the "Methods" clause in profile
4162 specifications.

4163 **6.15.8.3.1 General**

4164 The "Methods" clause should contain a "Generic operations" subclause.

4165 If the profile specification specifies a specialized profile that does not add requirements for operations, the
4166 "Generic operations" subclause shall contain only the statement: "All operation requirements are defined
4167 in base profile(s)."

4168 **6.15.8.3.2 Requirements for the specification of the "Profile conventions for operations" 4169 subclause**

4170 The "Generic operations" subclause shall contain a "Profile conventions for operations" subclause unless
4171 the profile is a specialized profile that does not add specifications for operations beyond those defined in
4172 its base profile(s).

4173 The "Profile conventions for operations" subclause shall specify conventions applied by the profile for the
4174 specification of requirements for operations; it shall follow the method-specific subclauses (if any).

4175 The "Profile conventions for operations subclause" shall state the operations specification that rules the
4176 definition of operations in the profile, as required in 5.19.12.2. For example, "This profile defines
4177 operations in terms of [DSP0223](#)."

4178 Table 20 defines three options, one of which shall be applied by a profile specification for the "Generic
4179 operations" subclause.

4180

Table 20 – Profile convention options

| Option | Requirements for the Intrinsic operations subclause |
|---|---|
| <p>Option 1 – Table includes each operation for each class.</p> | <p>Deprecated with version 1.0.1; replaced by option 2, with additional requirements specified in 6.15.8.3.3.</p> <p>"Support for operations for each profile class (including associations) is specified in the following subclauses. Each of these subclauses includes a table listing all the operations supported by this profile. Compliant implementations of this profile shall support all these operations."</p> |
| <p>Option 2 – Table includes operations with profile-specific requirements.</p> <p>The operations in the default list apply to the extent detailed in adaptation-specific subclauses of the "Methods" clause.</p> | <p>The "Profile conventions for operations" subclause of the "Methods" clause shall contain the text:</p> <p>"For each profile class (including associations), the implementation requirements for operations, including for those in the following default list, are specified in class-specific subclauses of OpScNumber."</p> <p>OpScNumber is the number of the Operations subclause of the Methods clause.</p> <p>A profile may define a default list of operations, as follows:</p> <p>"The default list of operations is as follows:</p> <p>operation-1</p> <p>operation-2</p> <p>..."</p> <p>The applicability of the default list shall be specified in adaptation-specific subclauses of the "Operations" subclause of the "Methods" clause; see 6.15.8.3.3.</p> |
| <p>Option 3 – Table includes operations with profile-specific requirements.</p> <p>Other operations may be implemented.</p> | <p>Deprecated with version 1.0.1; replaced by option 2, with additional requirements specified in 6.15.8.3.3.</p> <p>"Support for operations for each profile class (including associations) is specified in the following subclauses. Each of these subclauses includes either</p> <p>A statement "All operations from the default list specified in section nnn are supported as described by DSPxxx vX.y.z" where nnn is the number of the section containing the default list.</p> <p>A table listing all the operations that are not constrained by this profile or where the profile requires behavior other than described by DSPxxx."</p> <p>The default list of operations is operation-1, operation-2, ... Profile requirements for these operations are specified in the "Requirements" column.</p> |

4181 The default list of intrinsic operations for ordinary classes typically lists the intrinsic operations related to
 4182 manipulation of instances and possibly intrinsic operations to execute queries.

4183 **6.15.8.3.3 Requirements for the specification of class-specific operations subclauses**

4184 A subclause shall be included for each class adaptation (including association adaptations) defined by the
 4185 subject profile.

4186 Subsequent definitions in this subclause make use of the following ABNF rules:

- 4187 TableNum is the number of the table.
- 4188 OpSpec is a reference to the operations specification.
- 4189 PcoNum is the subclause number of the "Profile conventions for operations" subclause.

4190 If a default list of operations was specified, and the profile does not require modifications on that default
4191 list, the following statement (including the NOTE) shall be provided:

4192 "All operations in the default list in " PCONum " shall be implemented as defined in " OpSpec "."

4193 "NOTE Related profiles may define additional requirements on operations for the profile class."

4194 If a default list of operations was specified, and the profile requires modifications on that default list, the
4195 modification shall be stated in a separate table, and the following statement (including the NOTE) shall be
4196 provided:

4197 "Table " TabNum " lists implementation requirements for operations. If implemented, these
4198 operations shall be implemented as defined in " OpSpec ". In addition, and unless otherwise stated
4199 in Table " TabNum ", all operations in the default list in " PCONum " shall be implemented as defined
4200 in " OpSpec "."

4201 "NOTE Related profiles may define additional requirements on operations for the profile class."

4202 NOTE The quotation, the indentation and the use of a monospaced font are elements of the ABNF rule and are not
4203 part of the normative definition. Instead, the presented text is intended to be part of the normal text of the subject
4204 profile.

4205 If a table is provided detailing requirements for operations, the table shall have the format as defined in
4206 6.15.7.4.7.

4207 For operations related to associations the requirements defined in 6.15.7.4.8 apply correspondingly for
4208 "profile classes".

4209 **DEPRECATED**

4210 **6.15.9 Requirements for the specification of the "Use cases" clause**

4211 This subclause details requirements for the "Use cases" clause in profile specifications.

4212 **6.15.9.1 General**

4213 Each profile specification shall have a "Use cases" clause.

4214 Within the "Use cases" clause, each use case defined by the profile (see 5.24) shall be documented in a
4215 separate subclause, as detailed in 6.15.9.3.

4216 State descriptions (see 5.23) may be documented as part of a use case, or may be documented in a
4217 separate subclause of a "Use cases" clause that is referenced from within use case specific subclauses.

4218 **6.15.9.2 Requirements for the specification of subclauses containing state descriptions**

4219 A profile specification may contain zero or more subclauses with state descriptions depicting typical
4220 situations that a client may observe in the process of applying use cases defined by the profile. Each
4221 state description-specific subclause shall contain one state description.

4222 All or part of a state description may be provided in graphical form as UML object diagrams; in this case,
4223 the rules defined in 6.9.3 apply.

4224 The title of state description subclauses shall be formatted as follows:

```
4225 StateDescriptionSubclauseTitle = [ "StateDescription:" ] StateDescriptionName [ ":" ]  
4226 StateDescriptionTitle ]
```

4227 StateDescriptionName shall state the name of the state description. The name shall comply with the
4228 rules for names of named profile elements, and should be chosen such that it enables a human reader to

4229 grasp the situation detailed by the state description; the name shall be unique within the profile
4230 specification. `StateDescriptionTitle` may state a phrase that further details the purpose of the state
4231 description in situations where `StateDescriptionName` does not suffice.

4232 A brief description of the object diagram should be provided, with particular attention on the managed
4233 objects in the managed environment and their relationships that are represented by the CIM instances
4234 depicted in the object diagram.

4235 **6.15.9.3 Requirements for the specification of use-case-specific subclauses**

4236 **6.15.9.3.1 General**

4237 Each use case shall be specified in a separate subclause of the "Use cases" clause of a profile
4238 specification.

4239 The title of use case-specific subclauses shall be formatted as follows:

4240 `UseCaseSubclauseTitle = UseCaseName [":" UseCaseTitle]`

4241 `UseCaseName` shall state a name for the use case. The name shall comply with the rules for names of
4242 named profile elements, and should be chosen such that it enables a human reader to grasp the intent of
4243 the use case; the name shall be unique within the profile. `UseCaseTitle` may state a phrase that
4244 captures the purpose of the use case in situations where `UseCaseName` does not suffice.

4245 Each use case-specific subclause should contain a brief description of the use case.

4246 See A.5 for examples of use cases.

4247 **6.15.9.3.2 Requirements for the specification of preconditions in use cases**

4248 The definition of preconditions as required by 5.24.2 shall be provided within a first subclause within any
4249 the use case-specific subclause. The precondition subclause shall be titled "Preconditions".

4250 Sequences of statements expressing elements of preconditions should be organized in a list format.

4251 **6.15.9.3.3 Requirements for the specification of flows of activities in use cases**

4252 The description of flows of activities as required by 5.24.3 shall be provided in a separate subclause
4253 within any use case-specific subclause. The subclause shall be titled "Flow of activities".

4254 The following formal requirements apply:

4255 Use case steps should be numbered. Numbering is required if use case steps are referenced.

4256 Descriptions may contain references to UML object diagrams.

4257 Normative requirements shall not be duplicated in use case descriptions.

4258 Parameter values should be stated in a list format where each list entry describes one parameter and its
4259 value. If a parameter value is an embedded CIM instance, a list format should be used to state names
4260 and values of required or applicable properties. Descriptions of parameters or properties should provide
4261 an interpretation of their use in the management domain.

4262 The inspection of method results and return parameters may be described either as part of a use case
4263 step after the description of a method invocation, or as separate use case steps.

4264 The flow of activities should be the sequential processing of use case steps; however, the following
4265 phrases may be used to indicate special situations:

4266 StepPostCondition "; the use case continues with step" StepNumber "."

4267 Where StepPostCondition details a simple post condition of the use case step such as a
 4268 return value and its significance. If more than one next step is possible, each step should
 4269 be listed together with the respective post condition.

4270 "This completes the use case; the postconditions in" SubclauseNumber "apply."

4271 This phrase describes a normal completion of the use case. Within the description of one
 4272 use case at least one step should end with a normal completion of the use case.

4273 "This terminates the use case; the postconditions in" SubclauseNumber "apply."

4274 This phrase describes an abnormal termination of the use case. Within the description of
 4275 one use case zero or more steps can end with an abnormal termination of the use case.

4276 Alternatively to the format defined above, use cases may be presented as pseudo-code.

4277 **6.15.9.3.4 Requirements for the specification of postconditions in use cases**

4278 The definition of a postcondition as required by 5.24.4 shall be provided in a separate subclause within
 4279 the use case-specific subclause that is titled "Postconditions".

4280 Postcondition subclauses may be further subdivided into subclauses, addressing various situations
 4281 resulting from processing the use case such as success or failure. Such situations may likewise be
 4282 presented by other structuring elements such as lists; however, separate subclauses are required if the
 4283 content is referenced elsewhere.

4284 **DEPRECATED**

4285 Profile specifications that apply the condensed profile specification structure (see 6.14.2) shall not contain
 4286 a "CIM elements" clause because in this case the definition of CIM elements is replaced by the definition
 4287 of class adaptations within the "Implementation" clause (see 6.15.7.4), and the list of class adaptations is
 4288 provided as part of the "Synopsis" clause (see 6.15.5).

4289 **6.15.10 Requirements for the specification of the "CIM elements" clause**

4290 This subclause details requirements for the "CIM elements" clause in profile specifications.

4291 **6.15.10.1 General**

4292 Each profile specification that applies the traditional profile specification structure (see 6.14.3) shall
 4293 contain a "CIM elements" clause.

4294 Version 1.0 of this guide did not formally define the concept of adaptations; instead it informally used the
 4295 terms "class", "profile class", "profiled class", or "supported class". For details, see 5.19.1.

4296 Revisions of existing profile specifications that apply version 1.1 or a later version of this guide should
 4297 start using the term adaptation in modified text passages; however, it is not required to modify otherwise
 4298 unmodified text solely for the introduction of these new terms. The use of these terms in this guide shall
 4299 apply correspondingly to entities such as "class", "profile class", or "supported class" as used by profiles
 4300 written conformant to version 1.0 of this guide.

4301 If the subject profile is a derived profile that does not add specifications for "CIM elements" beyond those
 4302 defined in its base profile(s), the "CIM elements" clause shall contain the statement: "All CIM elements
 4303 are defined in base profile(s)."

4304 NOTE Typical examples of derived profiles not adding specifications for CIM elements are those derived from an
 4305 abstract profile for the sole purpose of providing a base for an implementation. Recall that abstract profiles must not
 4306 be implemented directly.

- 4307 The "CIM elements" clause shall contain the following subclauses:
- 4308 An initial "Overview" subclause; see 6.15.10.2.
- 4309 A subclause for each adaptation defined by the profile; see 6.15.10.3.
- 4310 **6.15.10.2 Requirements for the specification of the "Overview" subclause**
- 4311 This subclause details requirements for the "Overview" subclause of the "CIM elements" clause.
- 4312 The "Overview" subclause shall contain a table listing the adaptations defined by the profile (including association adaptations and indication adaptations). The table shall be labeled:
- 4313
- 4314 `CIMElementTableTitle = ProfileName "profile : CIM elements"`
- 4315 `ProfileName` shall be the registered name of the profile. Each entry in the table shall declare an
- 4316 adaptation defined by the subject profile.

4317 The table shall have four columns:

| |
|--|
| <p>AdaptationName – Cell values shall state the name of the adaptation.</p> <p>Elements – Cells may be split into subcells, as follows: The first subcell shall contain the name of the adapted class. If base adaptations are defined, these shall be stated in subsequent subcells, using the following ABNF defined format:</p> <pre>AdaptationReference = ProfileName "::<" AdaptationName</pre> <p>The value of <code>ProfileName</code> shall be the registered name (see 5.11.2) of the referenced profile that defines the referenced adaptation, and the value of <code>AdaptationName</code> shall be the name of the referenced adaptation, as defined by its defining profile.</p> <p>If a standard message is defined for an indication adaptation, that message shall be stated in a subsequent subcell.</p> <p>Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level for the adaptation, as defined in 6.10. The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If an adaptation is based on other adaptations and different requirement levels apply, these shall be specified in separate subcells in this column; however, within the scope of a cell in the "Adaptation" column, if all corresponding cells in the "Elements" column are required with the same requirement level, the respective subcells in the "Requirement" column may be collapsed into one cell containing the common requirement level. <p>Description – Cell values shall contain a description of the adaptation. The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If the requirement level is "conditional", and unless the condition is already stated in the "Requirement" column, the condition shall be stated here, as detailed in 6.12. – A textual description shall be provided that describes the purpose of the adaptation. The description should describe the managed object type that is modeled by the adaptation, unless that is already addressed with sufficient precision by the schema descriptions of the adapted class. – For trivial class adaptations defined by the subject profile that do not specify additional requirements beyond those defined in the schema definition of the adapted class, that shall be indicated by the following statement: "See CIM schema definition." – If the corresponding cell in the "Elements" column is split into subcells, the cell in the "Description" column shall be split into respective subcells, unless the description applies in all cases, in which case respective subcells in the "Description" column may be collapsed into one cell containing the common description. – If the value in any "Description" subcell exceeds 20 words, a separate adaptation definition subclause shall be provided within the "Implementation" clause; for details, see 6.15.7.4.3. In this case, the description shall be provided as part of the adaptation definition subclause, and the adaptation definition subclause shall be referenced from the cell, as follows: "See" AdaptationSubclauseNumber "." <p>AdaptationSubclauseNumber is the number of the subclause of the "Implementation" clause that contains the definition of the adaptation.</p> |
|--|

4318 **6.15.10.3 Requirements for the specification of subclauses defining class adaptations**

4319 The specification of the each class adaptation subclause shall be in compliance with 6.15.7.4, with the
4320 following admissible deviations:

4321 The title of the subclause may apply the deprecated naming convention using the name of the adapted
4322 class and a modifier; for details see 6.8.

4323 **DEPRECATED**

4324 **7 Implementation requirements**

4325 **7.1 General**

4326 Clause 6 defines the requirements for the implementation of one or more profiles. The primary target
4327 audience for this clause is implementers of profiles.

4328 **7.2 Implementation conformance**

4329 **7.2.1 Interface implementation conformance**

4330 A profile implementation is interface conformant to the profile if it conforms to all profile requirements that
4331 are defined only in terms of the profile defined model. Interface implementation conformance does not
4332 cover the relationship of instances and managed objects.

4333 Interface conformance can be validated exclusively by the use of the profile defined interface; this
4334 validation approach is also referred to as black box testing.

4335 Examples of requirements defined only in terms of the model are as follows:

4336 Value constraints that restrict a property value to a set of possible values, such as restricting the value of
4337 an EnabledState property to the values 2 (Enabled) or 3 (Disabled)

4338 Requirements for the existence of instances as a result of the successful execution of an operation or
4339 method

4340 **NOTE** However, it should be noted that if such a test is performed by creating the instance in a first step, and
4341 obtaining the instance in a second step, it is absolutely possible that the instance was already modified or deleted
4342 again after the first step, but before the second step is performed. For that reason, a more realistic test is checking
4343 the dependency between the instance and the managed object that it represents. See 7.2.2 for white box testing, and
4344 see also 5.6.2 for the existence of instances.

4345 Examples of requirements that are not defined only in terms of the model are as follows:

4346 The requirement that specific managed objects are to be represented by instances

4347 The requirement that a property value shall reflect a part of the state of a managed object, such as stating
4348 that the value 2 (Enabled) of an EnabledState property corresponds to the On state of the managed
4349 object

4350 The requirement that the execution of an operation or method causes a specified change in the managed
4351 environment, such as the activation of a managed object in the case where a change of the EnabledState
4352 property to 2 (Enabled) in the CIM instance representing the managed object is requested

4353 **7.2.2 Full implementation conformance**

4354 Full implementation conformance extends interface implementation conformance by also considering
4355 profile defined requirements that establish the relationship of the profile defined model and the managed
4356 environment.

4357 Full implementation conformance can be validated only by crosschecking the situation in the managed
4358 environment with the situation as viewed through the profile defined interface. Consequently, the
4359 validation of full implementation conformance requires direct access to the managed environment such
4360 that the situation inspected through that direct access can be cross checked against the situation

4361 presented by an implementation through the profile defined model; this validation approach is also
4362 referred to as white box testing.

4363 **7.2.3 Implementation conformance of multiple profiles**

4364 An implementation that implements multiple profiles is conformant to that set of profiles, if it is conformant
4365 to each profile.

4366 NOTE Profiles may have dependencies, for example, class adaptations in one profile being based on managed
4367 environments in other profiles.

4368 **7.2.4 Implementation conformance of profile versions**

4369 Profile versions are identified with the complete set of version numbers as defined in [DSP4014](#): major,
4370 minor, and update version number. However, as defined in 5.21, a subject profile refers to referenced
4371 profiles by specifying only the major and minor version number, implying the latest published update
4372 versions of the referenced profiles. Consequently it is possible that various implementations of a
4373 comprehensive set of profiles (such as an identified version of a particular subject profile, and all its
4374 referenced profiles), that are created at different points in time, use different update versions of the
4375 referenced profiles.

4376 For that reason, conformance of a *profile implementation* to a profile is defined only with regard to a
4377 specific update version of that profile.

4378 For example, if a particular profile P1 references version 1.0 of P2, and if P1 was written when version
4379 1.0.1 of a referenced profile P2 was published, at that time P1 would effectively reference version 1.0.1 of
4380 P2 and an implementation implementing P1 and P2 would have to implement version 1.0.1 of P2. When
4381 at a later point in time version 1.0.2 of P2 is published, from that time on P1 would effectively reference
4382 version 1.0.2 of P2, and an implementation implementing P1 and P2 would then have to implement
4383 version 1.0.2 of P2. Thus the first implementation conforms to version 1.0.1 of P2, and the second
4384 implementation conforms to version 1.0.2 of P2. The backward compatibility rules defined in 6.6 strive for
4385 only permitting changes that do not invalidate the second implementation to version 1.0.1 of P2; however
4386 — as detailed in 6.6 — it is possible that version 1.0.2 introduces incompatible changes as part of error
4387 corrections.

4388 **7.2.5 Listener implementation conformance**

4389 A WBEM listener is conformant to [DSP1054](#) if it implements all requirements targeting WBEM listeners.
4390 Note that profiles implementing [DSP1054](#) reference a particular version, and conformance is required
4391 with respect to that version.

4392 Further, a conformant WBEM listener shall implement the indication delivery related listener operations
4393 defined in the operations specification. Note that this guide does not require that the same operations
4394 specification is selected for the communication between the WBEM server and the WBEM listener, and
4395 that between the WBEM client and the WBEM server.

4396 **7.2.6 Client implementation conformance**

4397 There is no explicit concept of client conformance. However, a client intending to successfully
4398 interoperate with an implementation needs to adhere to the preconditions defined by the implemented
4399 profiles and by other specifications referenced by them.

4400 **7.2.7 Instance conformance**

4401 An instance of a CIM class is conformant to a class adaptation if it satisfies all normative requirements of
4402 the class adaptation, including those originating from base adaptations and from the schema.

4403 NOTE The collection of normative requirements of a particular class adaptation in the context of an implementation
4404 is a complex process that must consider all involved sources of requirements, such as base adaptations, the CIM
4405 schema definition of the adapted class, and operations specifications; see clause 6 for a detailed description of that
4406 process.

4407 7.3 Implementation requirements for a set of profiles

4408 7.3.1 General

4409 Typically, a profile is not implemented by itself but as part of the implementation of a set of profiles
4410 selected by the implementer. The implementation provides a management interface the management
4411 domains addressed by that set of profiles.

4412 This is also the reason why the term "implementation" (see 3.29) is defined as "a WBEM server that
4413 implements applicable portions of one or more profiles", as opposed to profile implementation (see 3.66)
4414 that is defined as "a subset of an implementation that realizes the requirements of a particular profile in a
4415 particular profile implementation context".

4416 The term *implementation-required* is defined as follows: A profile or profile element is implementation-
4417 required if its implementation is required as a result of recursively evaluating a profile and its referenced
4418 profiles, namely

- 4419 • The profile is a base profile of a profile selected to be implemented.
- 4420 • The profile is a mandatory profile of a profile selected to be implemented.
- 4421 • A profile element of a profile selected to be implemented is mandatory.
- 4422 • The profile or profile element is conditional or conditional exclusive, and either the condition is
4423 True, or the profile or profile element was selected to be implemented.
- 4424 • The profile or profile element is optional and was selected to be implemented.

4425 NOTE The implementation requirements of abstract profiles or profile elements are taken into account by concrete
4426 elements that are based on them. Likewise, the implementation requirements of embedded profile elements are
4427 taken into account by the elements embedding them.

4428 An implementation (of a set of profiles) shall conform to the implementation requirements of these profiles
4429 and their referenced specifications.

4430 For a functioning implementation, the following activities need to be performed:

- 4431 • Determine the *implementation adaptation set* by applying the merge algorithm detailed in 7.5.
4432 The implementation adaptation set is composed of *implementation adaptations* (see 7.3.2).
- 4433 • Implement each implementation adaptation in the implementation adaptation set, conforming to
4434 the requirements detailed in 7.4.

4435 7.3.2 Implementation adaptation

4436 An implementation adaptation is an adaptation that is implementation-required for a particular profile
4437 implementation. It merges the requirements of base adaptations and of other requirements sources, such
4438 as the schema definition of the adapted class, the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2), or of registry
4439 elements, such as alert messages or metric definitions.

4440 An implementation adaptation does not contain requirements for optional elements that were not selected
4441 to be implemented. Such requirements are simply not merged into the implementation adaptation during
4442 processing of the merge algorithm (see 7.5).

4443 **7.3.3 Profile implementation context**

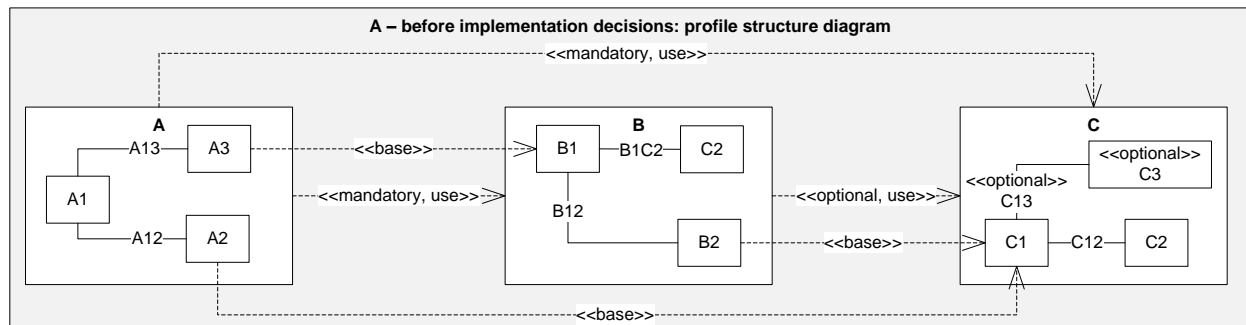
4444 An autonomous profile that is not referenced by other profiles has its own profile implementation context..

4445 A referencing profile may reference the same profile through multiple different profile references. Each
 4446 such reference establishes a different profile implementation context in which the requirements of the
 4447 referenced profile are evaluated; this recursively applies to profile references of the referenced profile. A
 4448 particular profile implementation context is characterized by the chain of profile references.

4449 NOTE It is very important to realize that the profile implementation context does not impose any additional
 4450 constraints on how the merged set of adaptations are implemented or packaged within an implementation.

4451 Figure 13 shows an example of a profile that references two other profiles, and the resulting profile
 4452 implementations.

4453



4454

4455 **Figure 13 – Example set of related profiles**

4456 Figure 14 shows the resulting profile implementation contexts in this example case:

4457 Profile A has its own implementation context because it is not referenced.

4458 The context of profile B is in the context of profile A because it is a mandatory profile of profile A.

4459 Profile C has two implementation contexts — in context of profile A and in context of profile B — because
 4460 it is a mandatory profile of profile A, and because it is an optional profile of profile B, and the decision was
 4461 made to implement profile C in context of profile B.

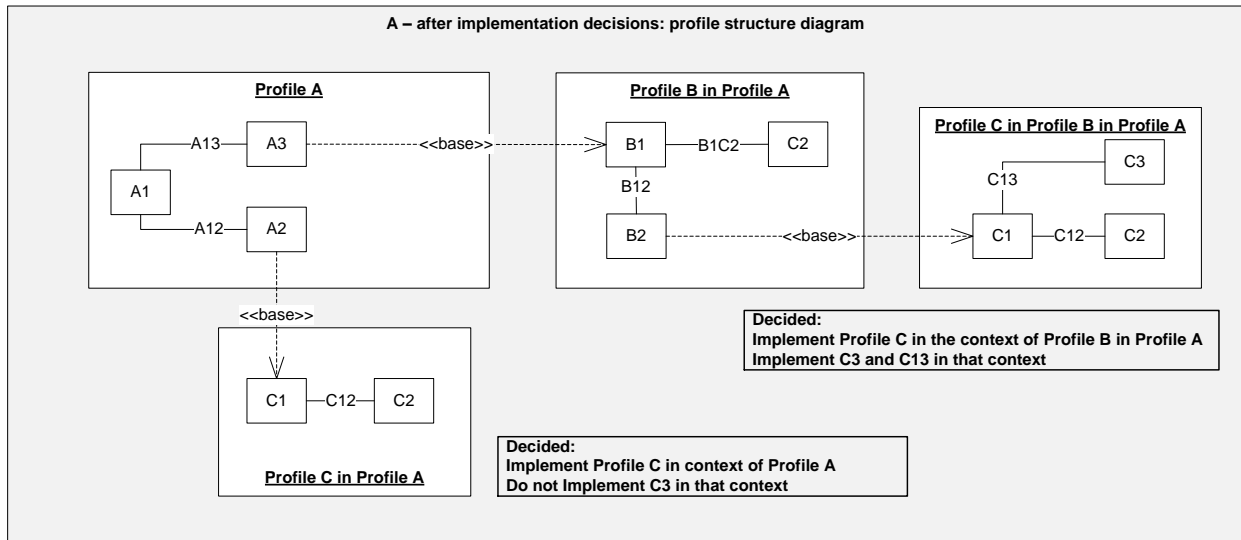
4462 In order to further substantiate the requirement for separate profile implementation contexts, consider that
 4463 adaptation C1 defined by profile C is the base adaptation for adaptation A2 defined in profile A, as well as
 4464 for adaptation B2 defined in profile B. A2 as well as B2 introduce additional implementation requirements
 4465 which in general are different, and can be incompatible with each other. For example, A2 might adapt a
 4466 subclass of that adapted by C1, and might define property requirements for properties that are defined in
 4467 that subclass, whereas B2 might define method requirements that are incompatible with those of A3.

4468 In addition, as shown in Figure 14, for each profile implementation context, different decisions on optional
 4469 elements are possible. For profile C in the context of profile A (depicted as A : C) it was decided not to
 4470 implement adaptation C3, whereas for the implementation B : C it was decided to implement adaptation
 4471 C3.

4472 In order to distinguish implementation adaptations with different profile implementation contexts within the
 4473 implementation adaptation set they need to be qualified with their profile implementation context, that is,
 4474 each implementation adaptation is identified by the adaptation name and the profile implementation
 4475 context.

4476 Furthermore, for each implementation-required profile implementation, the implementation adaptations
 4477 need to be constructed by merging the requirements from base adaptations.

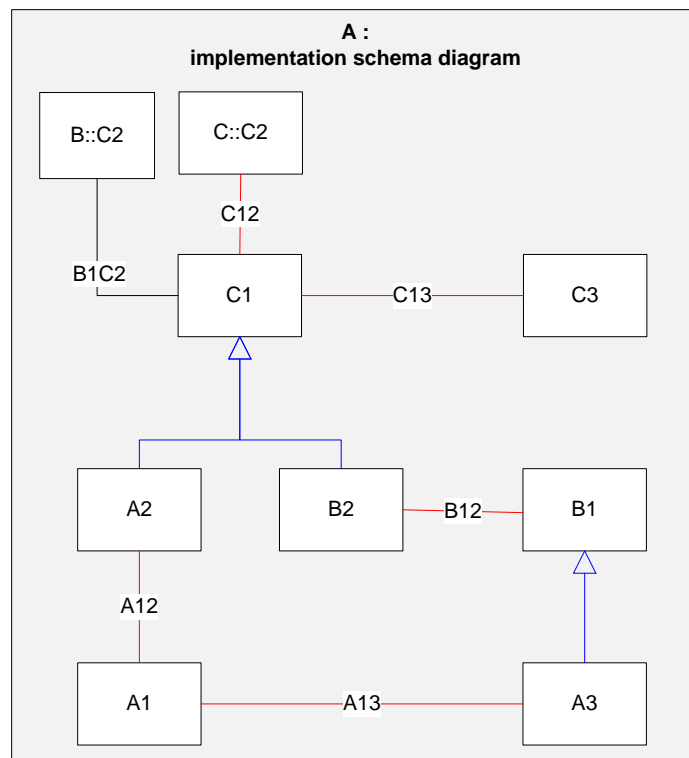
4478



4479

4480 **Figure 14 – Example resulting profile implementation contexts**

4481 Figure 15 shows an example of implementation adaptations that were created by merging the
 4482 requirements from adaptations from the profile implementations shown in Figure 14.



4483

4484 **Figure 15 – Example of merging of adaptations into implementation adaptations**

4485 As shown in Figure 14, adaptation A3 defined in profile A is based on adaptation B1 defined in profile B.
4486 Figure 15 shows the result of the merge process: For example, the result of merging the requirements
4487 from both adaptations A3 and B1 in context of the implementation of profile A is shown as the merged
4488 implementation adaptation A3. Likewise, because adaptation B2 defined in profile B is based on
4489 adaptation C1 defined in profile C, the merge of requirements from adaptations B2 and C1 in context of
4490 the implementation of profile B in context of that of profile A is shown as the merged implementation
4491 adaptation B2.

4492 **7.3.4 Implementation optimizations**

4493 During the realization of implementation adaptations, optimizations are possible. Any such optimizations
4494 go beyond the scope of this guide and are mentioned for informational purposes only.

4495 As a possible optimization example, if the implementation requirements do not diverge too much, it might
4496 be possible to realize two implementation adaptations with one common piece of implementing code that
4497 addresses the common requirements through a common path, and the small set of different requirements
4498 through different paths. For the example shown in Figure 15, this might be possible for A2 and B2.

4499 An additional potential for optimization is combining instances. For example, if two or more temperature
4500 sensors have identical capabilities in all aspects (including identical temperature sensor ranges), these
4501 capabilities could be represented by one adaptation instance. Combining instances is an optimization that
4502 is visible to clients that generally reduces the ability to represent differences and thus should be applied
4503 with great care.

4504 **7.3.5 Schema requirements**

4505 Implementations shall use the highest version of any schema from the set of schemas required by any of
4506 the profiles in the set of profiles that are implemented; beyond that, implementations should use the most
4507 recently published minor version within the same major version of any required schema.

4508 **7.4 Implementation requirements for implementation adaptations**

4509 **7.4.1 General**

4510 The requirements of 7.4 apply for implementation adaptations² that are determined for an implementation
4511 by means of the merge algorithm detailed in 7.5.

4512 In this subclause the implementation requirements for implementation adaptations are listed.

4513 Keep in mind that the quantification "all" for required elements of implementation adaptations only
4514 comprises implementation-required elements (see 7.3.2). In other words, an implementation adaptation is
4515 already stripped of optional and conditional elements that were not selected or are not required to be
4516 implemented. Thus the quantification "all" each time refers to all respective elements of only the
4517 implementation adaptation, which are the implementation-required elements of the adapted class (and
4518 other implementation-required elements such as operation requirements, instance requirements and the
4519 like) that were determined by applying the merge algorithm.

² Note that implementation adaptations are composed only of implementation-required elements; see the general remark in 7.4.1.

4520 For implementation adaptations with an implementation type of "instantiated", the following requirements
4521 apply:

- 4522 • Implement all properties², as detailed in 7.4.2
- 4523 • Implement all methods² and operations², as detailed in 7.4.3
- 4524 • Implement all instance requirements², as detailed in 7.4.4

4525 For implementation adaptations with an implementation type of "indication", the following requirements
4526 apply:

- 4527 • Implement all properties², as detailed in 7.4.2
- 4528 • Implement all indication-generation requirements², as detailed in 7.4.5

4529 For implementation adaptations with an implementation type of "embedded" or with an implementation
4530 type of "exception", the following requirements apply:

- 4531 • Implement all properties², as detailed in 7.4.2

4532 **7.4.2 Implementation requirements for properties**

4533 For each implementation adaptation all properties² shall be implemented, conforming with all value
4534 requirements and constraints established by profiles and by the schema. In particular, the profile
4535 requirements for property values to reflect the situation of the represented (aspect of the) managed object
4536 shall be implemented.

4537 If a property is required by any of the profiles being implemented (see 7.3.1) with either the mandatory
4538 requirement level, or with the conditional or conditional exclusive requirement level and the condition
4539 being True, the property value shall not be Null when retrieved, except if specifically allowed by the profile
4540 establishing the requirement level. The non-Null value requirement does not apply for implemented
4541 optional properties.

4542 The values of non-implemented properties shall be Null when retrieved. This is even the case if the
4543 schema definition of a property defines a non-Null default value because a schema defined default value
4544 is an initialization constraint that applies at instance creation time only.

4545 **7.4.3 Implementation requirements for methods and operations**

4546 **7.4.3.1 General**

4547 For each implementation adaptation² with an implementation type of "instantiated" an implementation
4548 shall implement all methods², conforming to the method semantics defined by profiles and by the
4549 schema.

4550 For each implementation adaptation² with an implementation type of "instantiated" an implementation
4551 shall implement all operations², conforming with the operation semantics defined by profiles and by the
4552 operations specification (see 5.19.12.2).

4553 The invocation of non-implemented operations and methods shall fail, indicating that the operation or
4554 method is not implemented.

4555 7.4.3.2 Input parameters**4556 7.4.3.2.1 Input parameters for methods**

4557 An implementation shall implement all input parameters², accepting all input values as required by
4558 profiles, within the constraints and input value requirements defined by profiles and the schema. This
4559 applies likewise to property values of embedded CIM instances.

4560 For methods the concept of optional parameters is not defined, values for all parameters are mandatory;
4561 however, Null is a valid value. Note that profiles may define specific semantics to specific values of input
4562 parameters; see 5.19.16.4.

4563 If, for a particular input parameter, value requirements are not stated in any profile, the implementation
4564 may support all or a subset (including the case of not supporting any input value) of the admissible value
4565 set established by the schema definition of the input parameter, or in case of operations by the definition
4566 of the operation in the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2).

4567 In case a value subset is supported, and if clients provide input values outside of that value subset, a
4568 respective error shall be indicated. This applies likewise to values of properties in adaptation instances
4569 provided as input.

4570 7.4.3.2.2 Input parameters for instance creation operations

4571 For instance creation operations the rules for implementing property values of input instances, for
4572 initializing property values that are not provided, the operation semantics and error reporting requirements
4573 are specified in the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2) and in profiles (see 5.19.12.3 and 5.19.16.2).

4574 Recall that CIM instances are not created by themselves, but are the representations of (aspects of)
4575 managed objects; for details, see 5.6. Thus, as part of performing an instance creation operation, the
4576 implementation shall create a managed object in (or add a respective existing one to) the managed
4577 environment such that the CIM instance representing that managed object is identical to the input
4578 instance with the value determination rules applied.

4579 If the implementation is unable to realize the instance creation in compliance with these rules, it shall fail
4580 the instance creation operation and report a respective error.

4581 7.4.3.2.3 Input parameters for instance modification operations

4582 For instance modification operations the rules for implementing property values of input instances, for
4583 selecting properties for that input values are considered or disregarded, the operation semantics and
4584 error reporting requirements are specified in the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2) and in profiles
4585 (see 5.19.12.4 and 5.19.16.3).

4586 Recall that modifiable CIM instances are the representations of (aspects of) managed objects; for details,
4587 see 5.6. Thus, as part of performing an instance modification operation, the implementation shall modify
4588 the represented managed object in the managed environment such that the CIM instance representing
4589 the modified managed object is identical to the input instance.

4590 If the implementation is unable to realize the instance modification operation in compliance with these
4591 rules, it shall fail the instance modification operation and report a respective error.

4592 7.4.3.3 Output parameters

4593 An implementation shall implement all output parameters, producing all output values within the
4594 constraints established by profiles, the schema and the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2), in
4595 accordance with the situation in the managed environment resulting from the method or operation
4596 execution. This applies likewise for return values.

4597 For methods, the concept of optional parameters is not defined; values for all parameters are mandatory,
4598 but Null is a legal value. For operations, optional output parameters may be defined in the operations
4599 specification, in the sense that in some situations no output values are returned.

4600 7.4.3.4 Error reporting requirements

4601 If error reporting requirements² (see 5.19.11.4 and 5.19.12.6) are defined for a method or operation, and
4602 during the method or operation execution an error occurs, the implementation shall apply the error
4603 reporting requirements that address the error situation.

4604 An error reporting requirement is applied by sending all referenced standard error messages, and by
4605 returning the CIM status code. The CIM status code is either explicitly required as part of the error
4606 reporting requirement, or implicitly required through the value of the CIMSTATUSCODE element of one or
4607 more of the standard error messages.

4608 If the error situation is addressed by more than one error reporting requirement, the implementation shall
4609 apply one of those error reporting requirements, as follows:

- 4610 • If a profile defines a relative order among the error reporting requirements, the implementation
4611 shall apply the error reporting requirements in that order.
- 4612 • If such an order is only established by the error reporting requirements of the operations
4613 specification (see 5.19.12.2), the implementation shall apply the error reporting requirements in
4614 that order.

4615 If no order is defined, the implementation shall apply the error reporting requirements that most
4616 appropriately reports the error. The additional description provided along with the error reporting
4617 requirements may be used as a guideline for selecting for the most appropriate error reporting
4618 requirements.

4619 7.4.4 Instance requirements

4620 Implementations of adaptations with an implementation type of "instantiated" shall reflect the situation in
4621 the managed environment by representing (aspects of) managed objects by adaptation instances, as
4622 required by instance requirements.

4623 7.4.5 Indication generation requirements

4624 Implementations of adaptations with an implementation type of "indication" shall support indications for all
4625 events specified by all indication-generation requirements (see 5.19.17.2), generating respective
4626 indications if the event that the indication is designed to report occurs. This applies likewise for indications
4627 reporting secondary events, such as lifecycle indications reporting changes of the CIM model as a result
4628 of prior changes in the managed environment. In addition, the requirements of the Indications profile (see
4629 [DSP1054](#)) apply.

4630 7.5 Merge algorithm

4631 7.5.1 General

4632 The purpose of the merge algorithm is determining — for a set of initially selected profile implementations
4633 and their dependent profile implementations — all required implementation adaptations plus all
4634 requirements that affect that adaptation implementation, namely

- 4635 • The requirements of the adapted class defined in the schema
- 4636 • The requirements from the adaptation itself, namely element requirements such as property
4637 requirements, method requirements and operation requirements — both with their error

4638 reporting requirements, and the instance requirements (or — in case of indications — the
4639 indication-generation requirements)

- 4640 • The respective requirements from base adaptations
- 4641 • The requirements from the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2)
- 4642 • The requirements from referenced registry elements

4643 The merge algorithm requires the repeated processing of profile implementation checks (see 7.5.3), each
4644 requiring repeated processing of adaptation implementation checks (see 7.5.4), in order to build the
4645 implementation adaptation set.

4646 The resulting implementation adaptation set contains — for a set of initially selected profile
4647 implementations and their dependent profile implementations — all implementation adaptations, each
4648 with all element requirements collected from the various sources listed above, and with all instance
4649 requirements or — in case of indication adaptations — indication-generation requirements.

4650 Optimizations are possible when realizing the implementation adaptations from the implementation
4651 adaptation set; see 7.3.4.

4652 7.5.2 Merge algorithm steps

4653 The merge algorithm starts with step 1):

- 4654 1) **Decision:** Select an initial desired set of profiles to be implemented.
- 4655 2) For each profile implementation selected in step 1), perform the profile implementation check as
4656 detailed in 7.5.3, in its profile implementation context (see 7.3.3).
- 4657 3) Inspect the resulting implementation adaptation set for possible implementation optimizations as
4658 described in 7.3.4.

4659 After performing step 3), the merge algorithm is completed.

4660 7.5.3 Profile implementation check

4661 A profile implementation check is always to be performed in a specific profile implementation context (see
4662 7.3.3).

- 4663 1) **Decision:** Select which optional and conditional³ features of the currently checked profile
4664 implementation are to be implemented; this will impact subsequent steps.
- 4665 2) For all conditional adaptations check the condition³, and if the condition is True, perform the
4666 adaptation implementation check (see 7.5.4), in the context of the currently checked profile
4667 implementation.
- 4668 3) **Decision:** Select which optional and which conditional adaptations (with a condition of False
4669 from step 2)) of the currently checked profile implementation are to be implemented. For
4670 selected adaptations perform the adaptation implementation check (see 7.5.4), in the context of
4671 the currently checked profile implementation.
- 4672 4) For base profiles of the currently checked profile implementation, perform the profile
4673 implementation check (described in this subclause), in the context of the currently checked
4674 profile implementation. This in effect causes the requirements of the base profile to be
4675 addressed as if they were requirements of the derived profile.

4676 NOTE Step 4) is necessary in order to pick up adaptations defined in the base profile that are not used as base
4677 adaptations, and thus require an independent implementation.

- 4678 5) For all conditional profiles check the condition³, and if the condition is True, perform the profile
4679 implementation check (described in this subclause) for the implementation of the referenced
4680 conditional profile, with the profile implementation context extended to the conditional profile.
- 4681 6) **Decision:** Select which optional profiles and which conditional profiles (with a condition of False
4682 from step 5) are to be implemented. For selected profile implementations perform the profile
4683 implementation check (described in this subclause) for the implementation of the referenced
4684 optional or conditional profiles, with the profile implementation context extended to the selected
4685 optional or conditional profile.
- 4686 7) **Decision:** Decide whether for the currently checked profile any scoped profiles are to be
4687 implemented. For selected profile implementations perform the profile implementation check
4688 (described in this subclause) for those profile implementations, with the profile implementation
4689 context extended to the selected scoped profile.

4690 7.5.4 Adaptation implementation check

4691 An adaptation implementation check is performed for an adaptation in a specific profile implementation
4692 context (see 7.3.3). It either creates a new implementation adaptation with that profile implementation
4693 context in the implementation adaptation set, or amends an existing one, as follows:

- 4694 1) Merge the requirements as exposed by the schema definition of the adapted class. Merging
4695 means creating the implementation adaptation within the implementation adaptation set if it did
4696 not yet exist, and adding or refining the element requirements as exposed by the schema
4697 definition of the adapted class.
- 4698 2) Merge the mandatory elements to the implementation adaptation (determined or created in step
4699 1)). Merging means adding or refining the element requirements with the requirements from the
4700 adaptation defined in the profile to be implemented.
- 4701 4) For any conditional elements check the condition. For those conditional elements where the
4702 condition is True, as in step 2) merge the respective element requirements to the
4703 implementation adaptation.
- 4704 5) **Decision:** Select which optional and conditional elements not addressed in step 3) are to be
4705 implemented, and — as in step 2) — merge the respective element requirements to the
4706 implementation adaptation.

4707 NOTE The potentially complex condition check in step 3) can be avoided for those conditional elements that are
4708 selected in step 3) anyway, by performing steps 3) and 4) concertedly.

4709 For any operation, merge the requirements from the operations specification (see 5.19.12.2).

4710 If the subject adaptation is based on other adaptations, perform the adaptation implementation check
4711 (described in this subclause) for the direct base adaptations, using the profile implementation context of
4712 the profile defining the subject adaptation, and then — in the context of the profile defining the base
4713 adaptation — mark the implementation of the direct base adaptations as addressed by a derived
4714 adaptation. The last part is necessary in order to avoid picking up those requirements in a later execution
4715 of step 4) of the profile implementation check.

³ The determination of a condition might involve optional elements. If so, at this point it needs to be decided whether these optional element(s) is (are) to be implemented, and that decision needs to be retained in later steps.

4716 7.6 Implementation of deprecated definitions

4717 Implementations shall conform to definitions of the schema, profiles and the operations specification (see
4718 5.19.12.2) regardless of whether or not they are deprecated. Clients should not rely on or exploit
4719 deprecated definitions, and they are encouraged to stop exploiting deprecated functionality as soon as
4720 possible.

ANNEX A (Informative) Examples

4721
4722
4723

4724

4725 **A.1 General**

4726 All the examples provided within ANNEX A provide excerpts from a hypothetical Example Fan profile. The
4727 examples are related to each other, but together they would not form a complete profile specification.

4728 **A.2 Example of a "Synopsis" clause**

4729 Table A-1 provides an example of a "Synopsis" clause; see 6.15.5 for requirements on the specification of
4730 the "Synopsis" clause.

4731

Table A-1 – Example of "Synopsis" clause

| X-5 Synopsis | | | | | |
|---|--------------|--------------|---------|--------------|---|
| X-5.1 Profile attributes | | | | | |
| Profile name: Example Fan | | | | | |
| Version: 1.1.0 | | | | | |
| Organization: DMTF | | | | | |
| Schema version: 2.24 | | | | | |
| Profile type: Component | | | | | |
| Central class adaptation: Fan | | | | | |
| Scoping class adaptation: ComputerSystem | | | | | |
| Scoping algorithm: FanInSystem | | | | | |
| X-5.2 Summary | | | | | |
| The Example Fan profile extends the management capability of a scoping profile by adding the capability to describe fans and redundant fans within managed systems. | | | | | |
| X-5.3 Profile references | | | | | |
| Table X-1 lists the profile references defined in this profile. | | | | | |
| Table X-1 – Profile references | | | | | |
| Profile reference name | Profile name | Organization | Version | Relationship | Description |
| Indications | Indications | DMTF | 1.2 | Conditional | The profile defining the creation and delivery of |

| | | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|------|-----|-------------|---|
| | | | | | indications. Condition: The Indications feature is implemented; see X-7.2.1 for feature definition. |
| FanProfileRegistration | Example Profile Registration | DMTF | 1.1 | Mandatory | The Example Profile Registration profile applied for the registration of implementations of the Example Fan profile. |
| FanPhysicalAsset | Example Physical Asset | DMTF | 1.1 | Optional | The Example Physical Asset profile applied for fans as physical assets. |
| FanSensors | Example Sensors | DMTF | 1.1 | Conditional | The Example Sensors profile applied for sensors of fans. Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4 for the feature definition. |

X-5.4 Referenced registries

Table X-2 lists the message registry references defined by this profile.

Table X-2 – Message registry references

| Registry reference name | Registry name | Organization | Version | Description |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------|---------|--------------|
| WBEMMREG | WBEM Operations Message Registry | DMTF | 1.0 | See DSP8016. |
| PLATMREG | Platform Alert Message Registry | DMTF | 1.1 | See DSP8007. |

X-5.5 Features

Table X-3 lists the features defined in this profile.

Table X-3 – Features

| Feature name | Granularity | Requirement | Description |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Indications | Profile | Optional | See X-7.2.1 for feature definition. |
| FanStateManagement | Fan instance | Optional | See X-7.2.2 for feature definition. |

| | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| FanElementNameModification | Fan instance | Optional | (Not detailed in this example) |
| FanSpeedSensor | Fan instance | Conditional | See X-7.2.4 for feature definition. |
| FanLifecycleAlerts | Profile | Conditional | See X-7.2.5 for feature definition. |

X-5.7 Adaptations

Table X-4 lists the class adaptations defined in this profile.

Table X-4 – Adaptations

| Adaptation | Elements | Requirement | Description |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------|--|
| Instantiated, embedded and abstract adaptations | | | |
| Fan | CIM_Fan | Mandatory | See X-7.4.3. |
| FanInSystem | CIM_SystemDevice | Mandatory | See X-7.4.4. |
| FanCapabilities | CIM_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities | Conditional | See X-7.4.5. |
| CapabilitiesOfFan | CIM_ElementCapabilities | Conditional | See X-7.4.6. |
| CooledElement | CIM_ManagedElement | Mandatory | See ... |
| ... | ... | ... | ... |
| FanSensor | CIM_Sensor | Conditional | See X-7.4.7. |
| FanNumericSensor | CIM_NumericSensor | Conditional | See X-7.4.8. |
| SensorOfFan | CIM_AssociatedSensor | Conditional | See X-7.4.9. |
| ... | ... | ... | ... |
| FanProfileRegistration | CIM_RegisteredProfile | Mandatory | See ... |
| ... | ... | ... | ... |
| FanSystem | CIM_System | Mandatory | Instantiated ordinary adaptation; scoping class adaptation; scoping profiles base their central class adaptation on this adaptation. |
| ... | ... | ... | ... |

| Indications and exceptions | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|-------------|---------------|
| FanAddedAlert | CIM_AlertIndication | Conditional | See X-7.4.34. |
| FanRemovedAlert | CIM_AlertIndication | Conditional | See X-7.4.35. |
| FanFailedAlert | CIM_AlertIndication | Optional | See X-7.4.36. |
| FanReturned-ToOKAlert | CIM_AlertIndication | Optional | See X-7.4.37. |
| FanDegradedAlert | CIM_AlertIndication | Optional | See X-7.4.38. |

X-5.8 Use cases

Table X-6 lists the use cases defined in this profile.

Table X-6 – Use cases

| Use-case name | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| ... | ... |
| DetermineFanState | See X-8.3. |
| ... | ... |
| RequestFanStateChange | See X-8.7. |
| ... | ... |

4732 **A.3 Example of a "Description" clause**

4733 Table A-2 shows an example of the "Description" clause for an Example Fan profile.

4734

Table A-2 – Example of a "Description" clause

| |
|---|
| <p>X-6 Description</p> <p>X-6.1 General</p> <p>The Example Fan profile addresses the management domain of representing and managing fans in managed systems, including:</p> <p>The representation of the relationship between fans and the elements that are provided cooling by the fan</p> <p>The representation of sensors measuring the revolution speed of fans</p> <p>Fan state management</p> <p>X-6.1 Fan</p> <p>A fan is a device within a system that provides active cooling to specific elements of a system, and/or to the system as a whole.</p> <p>For the management domain addressed by this profile, a fan is considered to be either active or inactive; any other potentially possible state needs to be mappable.</p> <p>X-6.2 System</p> <p>A system is an entity made up of components that operates as a 'functional whole'. A system can contain elements that require cooling, such as processors, chipsets, disks or power supplies. Each of these elements may require cooling by means of dedicated fans, and/or may depend on cooling provided to the system as a whole.</p> <p>X-6.3 Cooled element</p> <p>Cooled elements are elements contained by a system that require cooling.</p> <p>X-6.4 Temperature sensor</p> <p>A temperate sensor measures either the temperature of the system as a whole, or that of individual cooled elements within a system.</p> <p>X-6.5 Fan speed sensors</p> <p>Fans speed sensors allow monitoring the rotation speed of fans.</p> <p>...</p> <p>X-6.10 CIM model overview</p> <p>Figure <Fig1> represents the UML composite structure diagram the Example Fan profile.</p> <p>NOTE Here one or more UML composite structure diagrams and/or DMTF adaptation diagrams would be placed. For examples, see Figure 9.</p> <p>The FanSystem adaptation (see X-6.2) models systems (see X-6.2).</p> <p>The Fan adaptation (see X-7.4.3) models fans (see X-6.1).</p> <p>...</p> |
|---|

4735 **A.4 Example of an "Implementation" clause**

4736 **A.4.1 Example of the general layout of an "Implementation" clause**

4737 Table A-3 shows an example of the general layout of the "Implementation" clause; see 6.15.7 for
 4738 requirements on the specification of the "Implementation" clause.

4739 **Table A-3 – Overview example of an "Implementation" clause**

```

X-7 Implementation
X-7.1 General
...
// general implementation requirements
...
X-7.2 Features
// See A.4.2 for example definitions of features.
...
X-7.4 Adaptations
// See A.4.3 for an example of the "General requirements" subclause.
// See A.4.4 for examples of subclauses defining adaptations of ordinary classes and associations.
...
    
```

4740 **A.4.2 Example of feature definitions**

4741 Table A-4 shows examples of feature definitions within the "Features" subclause of the "Implementation"
 4742 subclause; see 5.20 for requirements on the specification of features.

4743 **Table A-4 – Example definitions of features**

```

X-7.2.1 Feature: Indications
X-7.2.1.1 General
The implementation of the Indications feature is conditional.
Condition: Any of the following is true:
The FanLifecycleAlertsFeature is implemented; see X-7.2.5.
The FanFailedAlert indication adaptation is implemented; see X-7.4.36.
The FanReturnedToOK indication adaptation is implemented; see X-7.4.37.
The FanFailedAlert indication adaptation is implemented; see X-7.4.38.
X-7.2.1.2 Feature description
    
```

The implementation of the Indications feature provides for indications being generated and delivered to subscribed listeners as the events modeled by these indications occur.

X-7.2.1.3 Feature discovery

The presence of the Indications feature is indicated by the exposure of an `Indications::IndicationsProfileRegistration` instance (see DSP1054) that is related to the `FanProfileRegistration` instance (see ...) with a `ReferencedProfile` association instance (see ...).

X-7.2.2 Feature: FanStateManagement

X-7.2.1.1 General

The implementation of the `FanStateManagement` feature is conditional.

Condition: The managed environment includes fans that are state manageable.

X-7.2.1.2 Feature description

The implementation of the `FanStateManagement` feature enables clients to request state changes on fans, such as activation or deactivation.

X-7.2.1.3 Feature discovery

The presence of the `FanStateManagement` feature for a particular `Fan` instance (see X-7.4.3) is indicated by the exposure of a `FanCapabilities` instance (see X-7.4.5) that is associated to the `Fan` instance through a `FanElementCapabilities` association instance (see X-7.4.6), and the value of the `RequestedStatesSupported[]` array property in the `FanCapabilities` instance is a non-empty list of values, each representing a supported requestable state for the fan.

X-7.2.3 Feature: FanElementNameEdit

[Not detailed in this example]

...

X-7.2.4 Feature: FanSpeedSensor

The implementation of the `FanSpeedSensor` feature is conditional.

Condition: The managed environment includes fans with sensors.

X-7.2.3.1 Feature description

Fan speed sensing is the capability of a fan to provide information about its revolution speed. Fan speed sensor information may be reported as discrete values such as "Normal", or as analogous speed such as "1200" rpm.

X-7.2.3.2 Feature discovery

The presence of the `FanSpeedSensor` feature for a particular `Fan` instance (see X-7.4.3) is indicated by the exposure of a `FanSensor` instance (see X-7.4.7) that is associated to the `Fan` instance through a `SensorOfFan` instance (see X-7.4.9), and the `Sensors` profile is supported for the `FanSensor` instance.

...

X-7.2.5 Feature: FanLifecycleAlerts

The implementation of the `FanLifecycleAlerts` feature is optional.

The FanLifecycleAlerts feature groups the requirements for reporting fan lifecycle events such as the addition of a fan to the managed environment, or the removal of a fan from the managed environment.

4744 **A.4.3 Example of the "Conventions" subclause**

4745 Table A-5 details an example of the "Conventions" subclause within the "Adaptations" subclause of the
 4746 "Implementation" clause; see 6.15.7.4.2 for requirements on the specification of implementation
 4747 requirements for operations.

4748 **Table A-5 – Example of the "Conventions" subclause**

X-7.4.1 Conventions

...

This profile repeats the effective values of certain Boolean qualifiers as part of property requirements, or of method parameter requirements. The following convention is established: If the name of a qualifier is listed, its effective value is True; if the qualifier name is not listed, its effective value is False. The convention is applied in the following cases:

In: indicates that the parameter is an input parameter

Out: indicates that the parameter is an output parameter

Key: indicates that the property is a key (that is, its value is part of the instance part)

Required: indicates that the element value shall be non-Null.

This profile defines operation requirements based on [DSP0223](#).

For adaptations of ordinary classes and of associations the requirements for operations are specified in adaptation-specific subclauses of X-7.4.

For association traversal operation requirements that are specified only in the elements table of an adaptation (i.e. without operation-specific subclauses), the names of the association adaptations to be traversed are listed in the elements table.

...

4749 **A.4.4 Examples of subclasses defining adaptations**

4750 Table A-6 details examples of subclasses within the "Adaptation" subclause of the "Implementation"
 4751 clause that define adaptations of ordinary classes and associations; see 6.15.7.4 for requirements on the
 4752 specification of class adaptations.

4753 **Table A-6 – Examples of subclasses defining adaptations**

| X-7.4.3 Fan: CIM_Fan | | |
|--|-------------|--|
| X-7.4.3.1 General | | |
| The Fan adaptation models fans in systems; fans are described in X-6.1. | | |
| The implementation type of the Fan adaptation is: "instantiated". | | |
| The Fan adaptation shall conform to the requirements for central elements as defined by the Profile Registration profile (see DSP1033). | | |
| Table X-8 lists the element requirements of the Fan adaptation. | | |
| Table X-8 – Fan: Element requirements | | |
| Element | Requirement | Description |
| Base adaptations | | |
| ExampleSensors::SensoredElement | Conditional | Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4. See DSPxxxx. |
| Properties | | |
| OperationalStatus[] | Mandatory | See CIM schema definition. |
| HealthState | Mandatory | See CIM schema definition. |
| VariableSpeed | Mandatory | See CIM schema definition. |
| DesiredSpeed | Conditional | Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4. See CIM schema definition. |
| ActiveCooling | Mandatory | Value shall be True |
| EnabledState | Mandatory | See X-7.4.3.3. |
| RequestedState | Conditional | Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See X-7.4.3.4. |
| ElementName | Conditional | Condition: The FanElementNameManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.3. |

| | | |
|---------------------------|-------------|--|
| | | See CIM schema definition. |
| Methods | | |
| RequestStateChange() | Conditional | Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See X-7.4.3.5. |
| Operations | | |
| GetInstance() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstances() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstanceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| Associators() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| AssociatorNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| References() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| ReferenceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| ModifyInstance() | Optional | See X-7.4.3.6, and DSP0223 . |

X-7.4.3.2 Property: EnabledState

The value of the EnabledState property shall convey the state of the represented fan. Admissible values are 2 (Enabled) and 3 (Disabled); all other values shall not be used. A value of 2 (Enabled) shall convey that the fan is activated and working; a value of 3 (Disable) shall convey that the fan is inactive.

X-7.4.3.3 Property: RequestedState

The value of the RequestedState property shall convey the most recently requested or desired state of the represented fan. Admissible values are 2 (Enabled) and 3 (Disabled); all other values shall not be used. A value of 2 (Enabled) shall convey that the fan is desired to be activated; a value of 3 (Disable) shall convey that the fan is desired to be inactive.

X-7.4.3.4 Method: RequestStateChange()

X-7.4.3.4.1 General

The requirement level of the RequestStateChange() method is conditional.

Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2.

The behavior of the method shall depend on the value of the RequestedState parameter; this is referred to as the *requested state* in this subclause. The Fan instance on that the method is invoked is referred to as the *target instance* in this subclause. The fan in the managed environment that is represented by the target instance is referred to as the *target fan* in this subclause.

The method semantics shall be as follows:

The value of the RequestedState property in the target instance shall reflect the requested state.

If the requested state is 2 (Enabled), the implementation shall execute an activation of the target fan.

If the requested state is 3 (Disabled), the implementation shall execute a deactivation of the target fan.

Any other requested state shall be rejected, issuing messages WBEMMREG::WIPG0227 and PLATMREG::PLATxxx1.

Depending on the outcome of the operation executed by the implementation, the resulting state shall be reflected by the value of the EnabledState property.

Table X-9 lists the parameter requirements for the RequestStateChange() method.

Table X-9 – RequestStateChange(): Parameter requirements

| Name | Description |
|----------------|------------------------|
| RequestedState | In, see X-7.4.3.4.2. |
| TimeoutPeriod | In, see X-7.4.3.4.3. |
| Job | Out, see X-7.4.3.4.4. |
| ReturnValue | See schema definition. |

X-7.4.3.4.2 RequestedState

A non-Null instance path shall be returned if a job was started; otherwise, Null shall be returned.

X-7.4.3.4.3 TimeoutPeriod

Client-specified maximum amount of time the transition to a new state is supposed to take:

0 or Null – No maximum time is specified

Non-Null – The value specifies the maximum time allowed

Note that for the case that the value is Non-Null and not 0, and the implementation is unable to support the semantics of the TimeoutPeriod parameter, the schema definition of the adapted class requires that the value 4098 (Use of Timeout Parameter Not Supported) is returned.

X-7.4.3.4.4 Job

A ConcreteJob (see ...) instance path shall be returned if a job was started; otherwise, Null shall be returned.

X-7.4.3.4.6 Error reporting requirements

Table X-11 specifies the error reporting requirements for the RequestStateChange() method. These requirements apply on top of those required by [DSP0223](#) for the InvokeMethod() operation.

Table X-11 – RequestStateChange(): Error reporting requirements

| Reporting mechanism | Requirement level | Description |
|--|-------------------|---|
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0208, PLATMREG::PLAT9001 | Mandatory | The requested state is not supported for the fan. |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0208, | Mandatory | A non-Null value for the Timeout parameter is not |

| | | |
|---|-----------|--|
| PLATMREG::PLAT9002 | | supported. |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG02019 | Mandatory | Method is not implemented. |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLAT9003 | Mandatory | Fan cannot be disabled due to excessive temperature. The detail text of WIPG0227 should be omitted or should indicate that the next message details the error. |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227 | Mandatory | Any other failure. As defined in WIPG0227, the failure shall be described in its detail text. |
| CIM_ERR_SERVER_LIMITS_EXCEEDED | Mandatory | More element changes are under way than the configured limit of concurrent changes, or there is a resource shortage in the WBEM server. |

...

X-7.4.3.5 Operation: ModifyInstance()

The implementation of the ModifyInstance() operation for the Fan adaptation is optional.

The behavior of the method shall depend on the Fan instance that is passed in as the value of the ModifiedInstance parameter; this is referred to as the *input instance* in this subclause. The value of the EnabledState property in the input instance is referred to as the *requested state* in this subclause. The key properties in the input instance shall be used to identify the Fan instance for which the modification is requested; this instance is referred to as the *target instance* in this subclause. All other properties in the input instance shall be ignored. The fan in the managed environment that is represented by the target instance is referred to as the *target fan* in this subclause. Using these terms, the method semantics with respect to the requested state shall be identical to those defined for the RequestStateChange() method; see X-7.4.3.4.

This profile does not specify the implementation behavior regarding other properties of the input instance.

Table X-12 specifies the error reporting requirements of the ModifyInstance() method. These requirements apply on top of those required by [DSP0223](#) for the ModifyInstance() operation.

Table X-12 – ModifyInstance(): Error reporting requirements

| Reporting mechanism | Requirement level | Description |
|---|-------------------|--|
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLATxxx1 | Mandatory | Operation not supported for the fan |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLATxxx2 | Mandatory | Temperature too high for disabling the fan |
| WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLATxxx3 | Mandatory | Insufficient power for enabling the fan |

...

X-7.4.4 Adaptation: FanInSystem: CIM_SystemDevice

The FanInSystem association adaptation models the relationship between fans and their containing system.

The implementation type of the FanInSystem adaptation is: "instantiated".

Each Fan (see X-7.4.3) instance shall be associated through a FanInSystem instance to the FanSystem

(see ...) instance representing the system containing the fan.

Table X-13 lists the implementation requirements for the FanInSystem adaptation.

Table X-13 – FanInSystem: Element requirements

| Element | Requirement | Description |
|---------------------------|-------------|---|
| Properties | | |
| GroupComponent | Mandatory | Key: Value shall reference the System instance representing the system that contains the fan Multiplicity: 1 |
| PartComponent | Mandatory | Key: Value shall reference the Fan instance representing a fan Multiplicity: * |
| Operations | | |
| GetInstance() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstances() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstanceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |

X-7.4.5 Adaptation: FanCapabilities: CIM_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities

The FanCapabilities adaptation models the capabilities of fans in managed systems.

The requirement level of the FanCapabilities adaptation is conditional.

Condition: One or more of the following conditions:

The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; for feature definition see X-7.2.2.

The FanElementNameEdit feature is implemented; for feature definition see X-7.2.3.

The implementation type of the FanCapabilities adaptation is: "instantiated".

For each fan supporting the FanStateManagement feature or the FanElementNameEdit feature the capabilities of that fan shall be represented by a FanCapabilities instance.

Table X-14 lists the element requirements for this class adaptation.

Table X-14 – FanCapabilities: Element requirements

| Element | Requirement | Description |
|-----------------------------|-------------|--|
| Properties | | |
| RequestedStatesSupported[] | Conditional | Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See CIM schema definition. |
| ElementNameEditSupported | Conditional | Condition: The ElementNameEdit feature is implemented; see X-7.2.3. If the ElementNameEdit feature is supported, the value shall be True, otherwise False. |
| MaxElementNameLen | Conditional | Condition: The ElementNameEditSupported property is implemented. See CIM schema definition. |
| Operations | | |
| GetInstance() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstances() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstanceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| Associators() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| AssociatorNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| References() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| ReferenceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |

X-7.4.6 Adaptation: CapabilitiesOfFan: CIM_ElementCapabilities

The CapabilitiesOfFan adaptation models the relationship between a fan and its capabilities.

The requirement level of the CapabilitiesOfFan adaptation is conditional.

Condition: The FanCapabilities adaptation is implemented; see X-7.4.5.

The implementation type of the CapabilitiesOfFan adaptation is: "instantiated".

Each FanCapabilities (see X-7.4.5) instance shall be associated through a CapabilitiesOfFan instance to the Fan (see X-7.4.3) instance for which it represents capabilities.

Table X-15 lists the element requirements for this association adaptation.

Table X-15 – CapabilitiesOfFan: Element requirements

| Element | Requirement | Description |
|---------------------------|-------------|--|
| Properties | | |
| ManagedElement | Mandatory | Key: Value shall reference the Fan instance representing a fan Multiplicity: 1..* |
| Capabilities | Mandatory | Key: Value shall reference the CIM_EnabledLogicalElement instance representing the fans capabilities Multiplicity: 0..1 |
| Operations | | |
| GetInstance() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstances() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstanceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |

X-7.4.7 Adaptation: FanSensor: CIM_Sensor

The FanSensor adaptation models fans with discrete speed sensors.

The requirement level of the FanSensor adaptation is conditional.

Condition: All of the following:

The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented (see X-7.2.4).

Fan speed sensors within the managed environment support reporting discrete speed.

The implementation type of the FanSensor adaptation is: "instantiated".

Fan speed sensors within the managed environment that support reporting discrete speed may be represented by FanSensor instances.

Table X-16 lists the element requirements for this class adaptation.

Table X-16 – FanSensor: Element requirements

| Element | Requirement | Description |
|-------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|
| Base adaptations | | |
| FanSensors::Sensor | Mandatory | See DSPxxxx. |
| Properties | | |
| SensorType | Mandatory | Value shall be 5 (Tachometer). |
| Operations | | |
| GetInstance() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstances() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |

| | | |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| EnumerateInstanceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| Associators() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| AssociatorNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| References() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| ReferenceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |

X-7.4.8 Adaptation: FanNumericSensor: CIM_NumericSensor

The FanNumericSensor adaptation models fan speed sensors that report analogous speed.

The requirement level of the FanNumericSensor adaptation is conditional.

Condition: All of the following:

The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4.

Fan speed sensors within the managed environment support reporting analogous speed.

The implementation type of the FanNumericSensor adaptation is: "instantiated".

Table X-17 lists the element requirements for this class adaptation.

Table X-17 – FanNumericSensor: Element requirements

| Elements | Requirement | Notes |
|---------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Base adaptations | | |
| FanSensors::NumericSensor | Mandatory | See DSPxxxx. |
| Properties | | |
| SensorType | Mandatory | Value shall be 5 (Tachometer) |
| BaseUnits | Mandatory | Value shall be 19 (RPM) |
| RateUnits | Mandatory | Value shall be 0 (None) |
| Operations | | |
| GetInstance() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstances() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstanceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| Associators() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| AssociatorNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| References() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| ReferenceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |

X-7.4.9 Adaptation: SensorOfFan: CIM_AssociatedSensor

The SensorOfFan adaptation models the relationship between fans and their sensors.

The requirement level of the SensorOfFan adaptation is conditional.

Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; for feature definition see X-7.2.4.

The implementation type of the SensorOfFan adaptation is: "instantiated".

Each FanSensor (see X-7.4.7) or FanNumericSensor (see X-7.4.8) instance shall be associated through a SensorOfFan instance to the Fan instance representing the monitored fan.

Table X-18 lists the element requirements for this association adaptation.

Table X-18 – SensorOfFan: Element requirements

| Element | Requirement | Description |
|----------------------------------|-------------|--|
| Base adaptations | | |
| ExampleSensors::AssociatedSensor | Mandatory | See DSPxxxx. |
| Properties | | |
| Antecedent | Mandatory | Key: Value shall reference the FanSensor (see X-7.4.7) instance or the FanNumericSensor (see X-7.4.8) instance representing the sensor attached to the fan. Multiplicity: 1 |
| Dependent | Mandatory | Key: Value shall reference the Fan instance representing a fan Multiplicity: * |
| Operations | | |
| GetInstance() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstances() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| EnumerateInstanceNames() | Mandatory | See DSP0223 . |
| ... | | |

4754

4755 **A.4.5 Examples of subclauses defining indication adaptations**

4756 Table A-7 details examples of subclauses within the "Adaptation" subclause of the "Implementation"
 4757 clause that define specific adaptations of indications.

4758 **Table A-7 – Examples of subclauses defining specific indication adaptations**

| X-7.4.34 Adaptation: FanAddedAlert: CIM_AlertIndication | | |
|--|-------------|--|
| The FanAddedAlert indication reports the event that a fan was added to a computer system; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0456. | | |
| The requirement level of the FanAddedAlert indication adaptation is conditional. | | |
| The implementation type of the FanAddedAlert adaptation is: "indication". | | |
| Condition: The FanLifecycleAlerts feature is implemented; see X-7.2.5. | | |
| Table X-45 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation. | | |
| Table X-45 – FanAddedAlert: Element requirements | | |
| Element | Requirement | Description |
| Base adaptations | | |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory | See DSP1054 . |
| Alert messages | | |
| PLATMREG::PLAT0456 | Mandatory | See DSP8007. |
| Properties | | |
| AlertingManagedElement | Mandatory | Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the added fan. |
| MessageID | Mandatory | Value shall match "PLAT0456". |
| OwningEntity | Mandatory | Value shall be "DMTF". |
| MessageArguments[0] | Mandatory | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance representing the added fan; see X-7.4.3. |
| MessageArguments[1] | Mandatory | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system. |
| X-7.4.35 Adaptation: FanRemovedAlert: CIM_AlertIndication | | |
| The FanRemovedAlert indication reports the event that a fan was removed from a computer system; for | | |

details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0457.
 The requirement level of the FanRemovedAlert indication adaptation is conditional.
 Condition: The FanLifecycleAlerts feature is implemented; see X-7.2.5.
 The implementation type of the FanRemovedAlert adaptation is: "indication".
 Table X-46 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

Table X-46 – FanRemovedAlert: Element requirements

| Element | Requirement | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------|--|
| Base adaptations | | |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory | See DSP1054 . |
| Alert messages | | |
| PLATMREG::PLAT0457 | Mandatory | See DSP8007. |
| Properties | | |
| AlertingManagedElement | Mandatory | Value shall reference the Fan instance that represented the removed fan. |
| MessageID | Mandatory | Value shall match "PLAT0457". |
| OwningEntity | Mandatory | Value shall be "DMTF". |
| MessageArguments[0] | Mandatory | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance that represented the removed fan; see X-7.4.3. NOTE: The Fan instance no longer exists. |
| MessageArguments[1] | Mandatory | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system. |

X-7.4.36 Adaptation: FanFailedAlert: CIM_AlertIndication

The FanFailedAlert indication reports the event that a fan within a computer system failed; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0458.
 The requirement level of the FanFailedAlert indication adaptation is optional.
 The implementation type of the FanFailedAlert adaptation is: "indication".
 Table X-47 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

Table X-47 – FanFailedAlert: Element requirements

| Element | Requirement | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------|---|
| Base adaptations | | |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory | See DSP1054 . |
| Alert messages | | |
| PLATMREG::PLAT0458 | Mandatory | See DSP8007. |
| Properties | | |
| AlertingManagedElement | Mandatory | Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the failed fan. |
| MessageID | Mandatory | Value shall match "PLAT0458". |
| OwningEntity | Mandatory | Value shall be "DMTF". |
| MessageArguments[0] | Mandatory | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance representing the failed fan; see X-7.4.3. |
| MessageArguments[1] | Mandatory | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system. |

X-7.4.37 Adaptation: FanReturnedToOKAlert: CIM_AlertIndication

The FanReturnedToOKAlert indication reports the event that a fan within a computer system returns to normal operation mode; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0459.

The requirement level of the FanReturnedToOKAlert indication adaptation is optional.

The implementation type of the FanReturnedToOKAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Table X-48 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

Table X-48 – FanReturnedToOKAlert: Element requirements

| Element | Requirement | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Base adaptations | | |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory | See DSP1054 . |
| Alert messages | | |

| | | |
|------------------------|-----------|---|
| PLATMREG::PLAT0459 | Mandatory | See DSP8007. |
| Properties | | |
| AlertingManagedElement | Mandatory | Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the fan that returned to normal operational state. |
| MessageID | Mandatory | Value shall match "PLAT0459". |
| OwningEntity | Mandatory | Value shall be "DMTF". |
| MessageArguments[0] | Mandatory | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the CIM_Fan instance representing the fan that returned to the OK state. |
| MessageArguments[1] | Mandatory | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system. |

X-7.4.38 Adaptation: FanDegradedAlert: CIM_AlertIndication

The FanDegradedAlert indication reports the event that a fan within a computer system starts operating in a degraded mode; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0460.

The requirement level of the FanDegradedAlert indication adaptation is optional.

The implementation type of the FanDegradedAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Table X-49 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

Table X-49 – FanDegradedAlert: Element requirements

| Element | Requirement | Description |
|------------------------------|-------------|--|
| Base adaptations | | |
| Indications::AlertIndication | Mandatory | See DSP1054. |
| Alert messages | | |
| PLATMREG::PLAT0460 | Mandatory | See DSP8007. |
| Properties | | |
| AlertingManagedElement | Mandatory | Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the fan that is in a degraded state. |
| MessageID | Mandatory | Value shall be "PLAT0460". |
| OwningEntity | Mandatory | Value shall be "DMTF". |

| | | |
|---------------------|-----------|---|
| MessageArguments[0] | Mandatory | Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the CIM_Fan instance representing the failed fan operating in a degraded mode. |
| MessageArguments[1] | Mandatory | Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system. |

4759 **A.5 Example of the "Use cases" clause**

4760 Table A-8 provides an example of the "Use cases" profile specification clause.

4761 **Table A-8 – Example of "Use cases" clause**

| |
|---|
| <p>X-8 Use cases</p> <p>...</p> <p>X-8.3 DetermineFanState</p> <p>This use case describes the use of the GetInstance() operation as adapted by this profile (see X-8.2.2) inspecting the state of a fan.</p> <p>X-8.3.1 Preconditions</p> <p>The client knows the instance path of the Fan instance representing the fan.</p> <p>X-8.3.2 Flow of activities</p> <p>1) The client obtains the Fan instance, invoking the GetInstance() operation with parameter values set as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The value of the InstancePath parameter is set to the input instance path that refers to the Fan instance. - Optionally, the value of the IncludedProperties[] array property may be set to one element whose value is "EnabledState"; this would reduce the returned instance to include only the value of the EnabledState property. <p>The implementation executes the operation as requested by the client.</p> <p>If the GetInstance() operation returns, the use-case continues with step 2).</p> <p>If the GetInstance() operation causes an exception, the use-case continues with step 4).</p> <p>2) The client inspects the return value</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - A return value of 0 indicates successful execution of the intrinsic operation; the use-case continues with step 3). - A return value of 1 (Not Supported) indicates that the implementation does not support the method; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.3.3.2 apply. - A return value of 2 (Unknown or Unspecified Error) indicates an error situation that is not covered by the profile specification; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in 9.3.3.2 apply. |
|---|

- 3) The client inspects the value of the EnabledState property of the returned CIM_Fan instance:
 - A value of 0 (Unknown) indicates that the state of the fan is unknown; this may be a temporary condition.
 - A value of 2 (Enabled) indicates that the fan is active.
 - A value of 3 (Disabled) indicates that the fan is inactive.
 - A value of 4 (Shutting Down) indicates that the fan is in the process of deactivating.
 - A value of 10 (Starting) indicates that the fan is in the process of activating.
 - Other values are not adapted by this profile.

This completes the use-case; the postconditions in X-8.3.3.1 apply.

- 4) The GetInstance() intrinsic operation caused an exception. The client inspects the CIM_Error instances returned as part of the exception.

X-8.3.3 Postconditions

This subclause lists possible situations after the use case execution.

X-8.3.3.1 Success

The fan state as reflected by the value of the EnabledState property is known to the client.

X-8.3.3.2 Failure

The fan state could not be determined; reasons were reflected through either through the value of the return value or through CIM_Error instances delivered as part of an exception.

...

X-8.7 EnableFan

This use-case describes the use of the RequestStateChange() method as adapted by this profile (see X-8.1.1) for enabling a fan.

X-8.7.1 Preconditions

The client knows the instance path of the CIM_Fan instance representing the fan.

Fan state changes are supported for that instance (for detection see X-9.4) and the fan is currently disabled (for inspection see X-8.3).

X-8.7.2 Flow of activities

- 1) The client requests activation of the fan, invoking the RequestStateChange() method on the input instance representing the fan, with parameter values set as follows:
 - The value of the RequestedState property is 2 (Enabled)
 - The value of the TimeoutPeriod property is not provided (Null)

The implementation executes the method as requested by the client.

If the RequestStateChange() method returns, the use-case continues with step 2).

If the RequestStateChange() method causes an exception, the use-case continues with step 3).

- 2) The client inspects the return value:
 - A return value of 0 indicates successful execution of the method. This completes the use-case; the post-conditions in X-8.7.4.1 apply.
 - A return value of 1 (Not Supported) indicates that the implementation does not support the method; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
 - A return value of 2 (Unknown or Unspecified Error) indicates an error situation that is not covered by the profile specification; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.3 apply.
 - A return value of 4 (Failed) indicates that the implementation was unable to enable the fan; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
 - A return value of 5 (Invalid Parameter) indicates that one or more of the input parameters were invalid; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
 - A return value of 6 (In Use) indicates that the fan is in use by another management activity; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.3 apply.
 - A return value of 4096 (Method Parameter Checked – Job Stared) indicates that an asynchronous task was started that performs and controls the fan state change operation that is represented by a CIM_ConcreteJob instance referenced by the value of the Job output parameter; the use-case continues with step 4).
 - A return value of 4097 (Invalid State Transition) indicates that the fan is in a state that (presently) does not allow a transition to the requested state; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
- 3) The RequestStateChange() method caused an exception. The client inspects the CIM_Error instances returned as part of the exception. This terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
- 4) The client obtains the CIM_ConcreteJob instance, invoking the GetInstance() operation with parameter values set as follows:
 - The value of the InstancePath parameter is set to value of the Job output parameter returned from step 1).

The implementation executes the intrinsic operation as requested by the client.

If the GetInstance() intrinsic operation returns, the use-case continues with step 5).

If the GetInstance() intrinsic operation causes an exception, the client inspects the CIM_Error instances returned as part of the exception. This terminates the use case; the postconditions in X-8.7.4.3 apply.

- 5) The client inspects the value of the JobState property:
 - A value of 7 (Completed) indicates successful execution of the use-case. This completes the use-case; the post-conditions in X-8.7.4.1 apply.
 - A value matching { 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 11 | 12 } (New | Starting | Running | Suspended | Service | Query pending) indicates that the asynchronous task has not yet finished; after waiting a certain delay, the client continues with repeating step 4).
 - Any other value matching indicates an error situation or a situation not anticipated in this profile; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.

X-8.7.4 Postconditions

This subclause lists possible situations after the use case execution.

X-8.7.4.1 Success

The fan is enabled.

If inspected for example by performing use-case X-8.3, the value of the EnabledState property in the instance of the CIM_Fan class representing the fan has the value 1 (Enabled).

NOTE The client should regularly validate (for example through the application of use-case X-8.3) that the fan remains enabled, as conditions in the managed environment (failures, activities by other operators, etc.) could cause fan state changes. Alternatively the client could monitor CIM_InstModification indications indicating state changes in the CIM_Fan instance representing the fan.

X-8.7.4.2 Failure with unchanged state

The fan remains disabled.

X-8.7.4.3 Failure with undefined state

The state of the fan is undetermined.

4762
4763
4764

ANNEX B (normative) Regular expression syntax

4765 This annex defines the regular expression syntax used in profile specifications to specify the format of
4766 values, especially those representing identifiers. The regular expression grammar below uses Augmented
4767 BNF (ABNF) as defined in [RFC5234](#).

4768 The ABNF usage conventions defined in the Document conventions of this guide apply.

4769 Profile regular expressions are a subset of the regular expressions defined in UNIX Regular Expressions.

4770 The following elements are defined:

4771 Special characters

4772 `SpecialChar = "." / "\" / "[" / "]" / "^" / "$" / "*" / "+" / "?" / "/" / "|"`

4773 where:

4774 "." matches any single character.

4775 "\" escapes the next character so that it isn't a SpecialChar.

4776 "[" starts a CharacterChoice.

4777 "]" ends a CharacterChoice.

4778 "^" indicates a LeftAnchor.

4779 "\$" indicates a RightAnchor.

4780 "\"*\" indicates that the preceding item is matched zero or more times.

4781 "+" indicates that the preceding item will be matched one or more times.

4782 "?" indicates that the preceding item is optional, and will be matched at most once.

4783 "|" separates choices.

4784 Ordinary characters

4785 `OrdinaryChar = UnicodeChar, except SpecialChar`

4786 where `UnicodeChar` refers to any Unicode character, as defined in [RFC3629](#).

4787 Escaped special characters

4788 `EscapedChar = "\" SpecialChar`

4789 Simple character

4790 `SimpleChar = OrdinaryChar / EscapedChar`

4791 Character sequence

4792 `CharacterSequence = SimpleChar [CharacterSequence]`

4793 A `CharacterSequence` is a sequence of `SimpleChars`, for example:

4794 "ABC" matching "ABC", or

4795 "D.F" matching "DAF", "DBF", "DCF", and so forth.

4796 Character choice

4797 `CharacterChoice = "[" CharacterSequence "]" ["^"]`

4798 A `CharacterChoice` defines a set of possible characters. It is indicated by square brackets ("[" and "]")
4799 enclosing the set of characters.

4800 If a caret ("^") is not suffixed after the closing bracket, any character from the set matches. For example,
4801 "r[au]t" matches "rat" or "rut".

4802 If a caret ("^") is suffixed after the closing bracket, any character not in the set matches. For example,
 4803 "r[au]^t" matches any three-character sequence with the middle character not being "a" or "u", for
 4804 example, "ret" or "r.t".

4805 **Single character**

4806 `SingleChar = "." / SimpleChar / CharacterChoice`

4807 For example,
 4808 "D.F" matching "DAF", "DBF", "DCF", and so forth, or
 4809 "GH[IJ]" matching "GHI" or "GHJ".

4810 **Multipliers**

4811 `Multiplier = "*" / "+" / "?" / "{" UnsignedInt ["," [UnsignedInt]] "}"`

4812 where:
 4813 "*" indicates that the preceding item is matched zero or more times.
 4814 "?" indicates that the preceding item is matched zero or one time (optional item).
 4815 "+" indicates that the preceding item is matched one or more times.
 4816 UnsignedInt is an unsigned integer number.

4817 **Multiplied character**

4818 `MultipliedChar = SingleChar [Multiplier]`

4819 A `MultipliedChar` is a `SingleChar` with a `Multiplier` applying, for example:
 4820 "C*" matching "", "C", "CC", "CCC", and so forth, or
 4821 "[EF]{1,2}" matching "E", "F", "EE", "EF", "FE" or "FF"

4822 **Character expression**

4823 `CharacterExpression = MultipliedChar [CharacterExpression]`

4824 A `CharacterExpression` is a descriptor for a sequence of one or more characters, for example:
 4825 "X" matching "X" only,
 4826 "ABC" matching "ABC" only,
 4827 "ABC*" matching "AB", "ABC", "ABCC", "ABCCC", and so forth,
 4828 "A[BC]D" matching "ABD" or "ACD", or
 4829 "1[.]{2,3}n" matching "1..n" or "1...n".

4830 **Grouping**

4831 `Grouping = "(" CharacterExpression ")" [Multiplier]`

4832 A `Grouping` is a `CharacterExpression` that optionally can be multiplied, for example:
 4833 "(ABC)" matching "ABC",
 4834 "(XYZ)+" matching "XYZ", "XYZXYZ", "XYZXYZXYZ", and so forth.

4835 **ChoiceElement**

4836 `ChoiceElement = Grouping / CharacterExpression`

4837 **Choice**

4838 `Choice = ChoiceElement ["|" Choice]`

4839 A `Choice` is a choice from one or more `ChoiceElements`, for example:
 4840 "(DEF)?" matching "" or "DEF",
 4841 "GHI" matching "GHI", or
 4842 "(DEF)?|GHI" matching "", "DEF", or "GHI".

4843 **Left anchor**

4844 `LeftAnchor = "^"`

4845 A `LeftAnchor` forces a match at the beginning of a string.

4846 **Right anchor**

4847 `RightAnchor = "$"`

4848 A `RightAnchor` forces a match at the end of a string.

4849 **AnchoredExpression**

4850 `AnchoredExpression = [RightAnchor] Choice [LeftAnchor]`

4851 An `AnchoredExpression` is a `Choice` that is optionally anchored to the left end, to the right end, or to
4852 both ends of a string.

4853 **AnchoredChoice**

4854 `AnchoredChoice = AnchoredExpression [AnchoredChoice]`

4855 An `AnchoredChoice` is a choice from one or more `AnchoredExpressions`.

4856 **RegularExpressionInProfile**

4857 `RegularExpressionInProfile = AnchoredChoice`

4858 A regular expression within a profile is an `AnchoredChoice`.

ANNEX C
(informative)
Change log

4859

4860

4861

4862

| Version | Date | Description |
|---------|------------|--|
| 1.0.0 | 2006-06-14 | |
| 1.0.1 | 2009-08-05 | <p>DMTF Standard Release</p> <p>Changes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Updated copyright statement• Updated and corrected references listed in 2• Added provisions for specifying a scoping algorithm in 6.1• Simplified and corrected profile conventions for operations in 6.4.2• Added Annex F, Experimental Content• Added Annex G, Change Log• Added Bibliography• Minor text corrections throughout the document. |

| Version | Date | Description |
|---------|------------|---|
| 1.1.0 | 2011-06-30 | <p>DMTF Standard</p> <p>Incorporated changes resulting from comments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refine the definition of requirement levels with respect to their impact on the implementation, and define how they are to be used in profiles • Synchronize the approaches for metrics and indications • Allow that indication/metric adaptations can also be defined on adaptations that are based on those in the Indications / Base Metrics profiles • Multiple alert message possible for one alert indication adaptation • Clarified that a business entity can be an "organization" • Introduce the concept of an implementation type for adaptations • Added the "prohibited" requirement level • Subcategories in the "Adaptation table" • Require that association adaptations, and adaptations they reference, are to be required separately in profiles, with the suggestion of defining a direct or feature based dependency • Allow concrete profiles to specify abstract adaptations (because those have no impact on clients or implementations) • Add provision to allow separate constraints to be specified for presentation, initialization and modification of properties • Add provisions to allow input value requirements for properties and method parameters • Prohibition of input values for key properties • Requiring profiles to define a CIM based discovery mechanism for conditional / conditional exclusive and optional profile elements that enables client to determine whether the profile element is implemented (see 5.10). • Lifted strong 20 word requirements in table cells to recommendation • Renamed "General requirements" subclause of "Adaptations" subclause to "Conventions" • Require a non-Null value for mandatory properties in adaptation instances (and for conditional / conditional exclusive properties, with the condition being True) |
| 1.1.1 | 2013-08-01 | Update operation names to match DSP0223. |

| Version | Date | Description |
|---------|------------|--|
| 1.2.0 | 2014-07-31 | <p>DMTF Standard:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Included changes from v1.1.1 • Add Pattern profiles • Misc editorial fixes • Add usage of the "derivation requirement level clause. • Deprecation of Managed environment condition • Misc clarifications • Addition of non-Central class adaptations within Central class adaptation clause. • Restructured into three top-level clauses to improve readability, Principle concepts, Specification requirements, and Implementation requirements. • Removed all diagram types except DMTF adaptation and DMTF object. • Added MRP clause • Added object diagram example • Added additional CSD example • Distinguished profile implementation from profile implementation context. |

Bibliography

4863

4864 This clause lists references that are helpful for the application of this guide.

4865 DMTF DSP0200, *CIM Operations over HTTP 1.3*,
4866 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0200_1.3.pdf

4867 DMTF DSP1000, *Management Profile Specification Template 1.2*
4868 http://dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP1000_1.2.3.pdf

4869 UML Specifications,
4870 http://www.omg.org/technology/documents/modeling_spec_catalog.htm#UML